

高考英语手写笔记大全

第一部分：语法专题

冠词

名词、数词

代词

形容词和副词

第二部分：语法专题

动词

时态和语态

非谓语动词

情态动词和虚拟语气

第三部分：语法专题

介词、连词、并列词

状语从句、名词性从句、定语从句

特殊句式

情景交际

第四部分：高考题型

听力

单项选择

完形填空

阅读理解

任务型阅读

书面表达

目 录

第一部分 语法讲解

专题一 冠词.....	1
专题二 名词、数词.....	12
专题三 代词.....	24
专题四 形容词和副词.....	35
专题五 动词.....	47
专题六 时态和语态.....	64
专题七 非谓语动词.....	73
专题八 情态动词和虚拟语气.....	86
专题九 介词、连词、并列句.....	96
专题十 状语从句、名词性从句、定语从句.....	108
专题十一 特殊句式.....	132
专题十二 情景交际.....	148

第二部分 高考题型讲解

专题一 听力.....	166
专题二 单项选择.....	179
专题三 完形填空.....	182
专题四 阅读理解.....	196
专题五 任务型阅读.....	245
专题六 书面表达.....	260

第一部分：语法讲解

主题一：冠词

一、考纲解读

考点：冠词 (定冠词 ^{the}、不定冠词 ^{a/an}、零冠词 ^{无0})

重点：冠词活用，表泛指、特指用法。

高考考点分布：泛指类指1题，特指类指1题，习语1题，冠词活用3题。

二、知识归纳

1. 冠词的类别

	冠词	名词	eg.
泛指	a(n) 一个	可数	1. A horse is enough. (表数量)
	an 一类	可数	2. A horse is a useful animal. (表个体)
	the 一类	可数	3. The horse is a useful animal. (表全体)
特指	0 一类	可复	4. 0 Horses are useful animals.
	0	可	5. 0 Water is a liquid.
	the	可数 可复	6. The water in this well is sweet. 7. The horse tied to the tree belongs to Mr Smith. 8. The horses under the trees are Jack's.

Tips: 1) 可数 泛指时用 a/an

2) 可复、回泛指时不用冠词

3) 无论回还是回特指都用 the.

2. 不定冠词的用法

★ ① a + 辅音音素 a university student, a union.
an + 元音音素 eg. an hour, an honour, an honest boy. There is a "u", an "am" and a "p" in the w^j



★ 不是字母，是音素！所谓元音音素，就是看单词第一个字母的发音，通常考的最多的是对于

字母 "u" 的区别，当字母 u 发音为 "ju:" 时，如 useful / European，则用 a.

② 表示“一个”，与数词 one 相同

eg. He is a Frenchman, not an American.

③ 专有名词前表示“某一个”“一个叫...的人”。

eg. A Mr Smith is waiting for you at the school gate.

④ 表示“每一”，相当于 per，用于某些时间、重量、长度等单位前

eg. 500 dollars a ton; 60 mile an hour; twice a week.

* ⑤ a + most 表示“very”

eg. This is a most interesting book. That is a best dictionary.

= This is a very interesting book. That is a very good dictionary.

TIPS. 除 most, 还有其它表最高级的词, 如 best 等, 也一样用。

* ⑥ a + 序数词, 表示“每一”, “又一”

eg. You can try it, a second time if you fail.

When I sat down, a fifth man rose to speak.

不表示第五个, 而是又一个另的。

⑦ a(n) + 名词, 作表语(表职业)

eg. He became a sailor after he grew up.

但 He turned sailor after he grew up.
名词作表语

⑧ 表“同一”, “相同”, 等于 the same

eg. They are of an age. = They are of the same age.

Birds of a feather flock together. (物以类聚)



⑨ 感叹句中。

eg. What a splendid performance it is!
... rious the problem it is!

Tips: 这里详细讲一下 what 与 how 在感叹句中的用法.

1) What 只对名词发感叹.

① what + a(an) + (形容词) + 单回

eg. What a day!

What a beautiful girl she is!

② what + (形容词) + 复回

eg. What good students they are!

③ what + (形容词) + 回

eg. What bad weather!

2) How 可以对形容词, 副词, 名词, 谓语动词发感叹

① How + 形容词

eg. How cold it is today!

② How + 副词

eg. How fast they are running!

③ How + 形容词 + a(an) + 单回

eg. How good an example he set to us!

④ How + many / much / few / little + 名词

eg. How many books he has!

⑤ 对谓语动词发感叹

eg. How time flies!

华丽地分割线, 下面回到不定冠词的用法

① 在 so, as, too, how + 形容词后.

eg. He is so famous a poet that he is admired by others.

It is as fine a day as I have ever spent.



It is too difficult a book for you to read.

He doesn't know how precious a thing it is.

① 在 half, many, quite, rather, such 后

eg. half a dozen of apples, many a flower, quite a good idea.
rather a clever boy, such a funny expression.

② 物质名词具体化, 表一类/阵/份.

eg. a heavy rain / a coffee / a wonderful idea

③ 抽象名词具体化, 表一个具体的人或事.

eg. a great success / It is an honour to ... / It is a pleasure to ...

④ 地上独一无二东西前有修饰语时

eg. We can see a full moon tonight.

China hopes to have a peaceful and friendly world in the 21st century.

Tips: 若无修饰词, 用 the, 如 the moon

⑤ 在表示季节, 月份, 日期, 三餐前的名词有修饰语时

eg. We had a very cold winter last year.
a rainy Sunday / a wonderful lunch

⑥ 首次提到的可数名词单数前

eg. There is a man at the gate. The man is Tom.

⑦ 可数名词泛指一类人或物前.

eg. A teacher must love his students.

⑧ 某些固定短语.



a great deal of + 不可数名词 a number of 可数名词
as a result of 结果
get in a word 插话

a great many + 可数名词 a lot of 可数/不可数名词
all of a sudden 突然
in a hurry 匆忙

go for a walk 出去散步 do a good deed 做好事
 after a while 过一会儿 have a cold / look / rest / swim / fever / seat etc.
 in a short while 不久/立刻 have a good time / trip etc.
 once in a while 不时, 偶尔 once upon a time 从前
 once at a time 一次一个 be a waste of 浪费

冠词的使用

① 用在姓氏复数前, 表一家人或夫妇二人。

eg. The Greens are at table.

② 用在年代、朝代名词及逢十的数词(表某个年代)前。

eg. the Tang Dynasty / in the 1990's 或 in the 1980s

③ 用在表量度单位的名词前, 表示“每一”。

eg. I have hired the car by the hour.

④ 句型“动词 + sb. + 介词 + the + 身体某部位”中的the不可用人称代词代替。

eg. take sb. by the arm. / hit sb. in the face.

he red in the face (脸红) / he blind in the eye (眼瞎)

⑤ 谈及整个类属的名词前

eg. The lion is more fierce than the wolf.

⑥ 表方向、方位的名词前



eg. in the east / west / ~~west~~^{north} / south

on the right

① 表自然现象名词前

eg. the weather, the climate, the wind

+ 前面永远无冠词的词有: nature / space / health
(永远)

② 用在形容词前使之名词化, 表一类人或事物.

eg. the poor / the unemployed / the impossible

③ 乐器, 文娱场所前

eg. play the violin / piano / guitar

go to the cinema

* 中国乐器前不用the, 如: play erhu (二胡)

当乐器作普通名词时, 不用the, 如: He is playing a borrowed violin.

④ 在某项发明的单数名词前.

eg. The telephone was invented ...

⑤ 用在 only, right, same, very 之前, just 之后

eg. the only person ...

This is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the very book that I am eager to read.} \\ \text{just the} \end{array} \right.$

⑥ 与民族、国籍的形容词并用指全体

eg. The Chinese / The English



* ⑦ 用在越...越...结构中

eg. The busier he is, the happier he feels.

④ 专有名词 (江河湖海洋; 山脉群岛; 海湾沙漠海峡; 国名; 公共建筑; 组织机构; 杂志会议)

eg. the Yangtze River / the Atlantic Ocean / the Alps 阿尔卑斯山

the Taiwan Straits 台湾海峡 / the Sahara Desert 撒哈拉沙漠

the People's Republic of China 中华人民共和国

the Great Wall / the British Museum

the United Nations / the World Trade Organization

the Times 泰晤士报 / the Xi'an Incident 西安事变

⑤ 高考中常见的纯不可数名词要牢记, 永远不与冠词连用

baggage (luggage), furniture, health, weather, fun, space (太空),

advice, word, progress, information, news.

⑥ 固定短语 (这些词组用于写作都很好, 以后会作统一整理, 先背起来~)

at the age of

*be in the habit of 有...的习惯

*make the most / best of (充分利用)

*the other day (= several days ago)

*not in the least (= not at all)

by the end of 到...时为止

*in the way 挡路

In the corner of 在...前角落

*on the one hand, on the other hand

go to the doctor's

*on the air 在广播

to tell you the truth

Tips: 虽然看上去用法有16点, 怪吓人的, 但是合都不可忽视!

记忆口诀: 特指要提和唯一, 方位顺序和介词, 姓氏复数同合者, 岛屿海峡和海湾

年代团体和机关, 海洋党派最高级, 沙漠河流与群山,

船名建筑和组织, 会议条约和报刊, 请牢记冠词



4. 零冠词的使用

① 不可数名词, 复数名词表泛指

eg. go for advice / Horses are useful animals.

② 月季, 星期, 暑假, 洲; 称呼, 头衔, 取号前; 三餐, 球类, 惯用语; 学科, 棋类

★ eg. We selected him president of the society.

He likes history, because he can learn the history of China. ^{特指}

He speaks Chinese

the Chinese language.

③ turn, go 作为“变成, 成为”

eg. He turned scientist. ^{原形常考}

★ ④ “单数名词 + as/though + 主语 + 谓语, 主句” 意为“虽然/尽管...但是...”

eg. Here as he is, he has some shortcomings. ^{此为让步状语从句, 写作中使用非常}

★ ⑤ 独立主格结构: “名词 + 介词 + 名词”

eg. He sat at the table, pen in hand. ^{> (独立主格)}

, a pen in his hand.

非常重要!!!

, with a pen in his hand. (with 复合结构)

and a pen was in his hand. (并列结构)

⑥ 有些不可数名词前尽管常有形容词, 也不用 a/an, 但特指可用 the.

eg. What fine weather it is!

Here is good news for you.

I wish you good luck in everything.



make great progress

Here is good news for you.

三 例题讲解

1. (2011课标全国I, 33) It is generally accepted that _____ boy must learn to stand up and fight like _____ man.

A a, a B a, the C the, the D a, 不填

选A. 句意: 人们普遍认为男孩子就应该学会站起来像男人一样去战斗.

Tips: boy与man都是同, 表泛指.

2. (2011江西, 22) — It's said John will be in a job paying over \$60,000 _____ year. — Right, he will also get paid by _____ week.

A the, the B a, the C the, a D a, a

选B. year是单数名词, \$60,000 a year相当于\$60,000 every year
by + the + 表单位的名词. 意为“按...”.

3. (2011浙江, 2) Experts think that _____ recently discovered painting may be _____ Picasso.

A the, 不填 B a, the C a, 不填 D the, a

选D. 句意: 专家们最近发现的那幅画可能是毕加索的画.

Tips: 第一空特指“最近发现的画”, 第二空泛指“毕加索的一幅画”.

4. When you finish reading the book, you will have _____ better understanding of _____ life.

A a, the B the, a C the, the D a, /

选D. 固定词组 have a better understanding of sth 理解频率超高.

5. Washing machines made by China have won _____ worldwide attention and Haier has become _____ popular name.



A. a, the B. /, a C. /, the D. the, a

win attention 获得关注

become a popular name 成为.

6. — I am so sorry to have come late for the meeting
— It's not your fault. With rush-hour traffic and heavy rain, it is no wonder you were late.

A. a; a B. the, the C. /, / D. /, a

选B. 两者都特指, 这可由 rush-hour 和 heavy 这两个形容词作的修饰看出.

7. (2010.江苏, 21) The visitors here are greatly impressed by the fact that people from all walks of life are working hard for new Jiangsu.

A. /, a B. /, the C. the, a D. the, the

选A all walks of life 社会各阶层

people 这里作泛指, 不加冠词

Jiangsu 一般不加冠词, 但前面有形容词修饰, 要用不定冠词.

句意: 来江苏的游客都对此印象深刻: 为一个崭新的江苏, 来自各行各业的人都在努力着.

总结: 尽管关于冠词的考查在高考中所占比例比较少, 但是错误率还是比较高的, 尤其当出现在选择题第一题时, 如果难度较高, 大家心态要摆正, 切忌慌乱! 实在听不懂, 就做下面的题, 别太过纠结, 不可在上面浪费太多时间, 单选题目一定要快.



专题二 名词、数词

一. 考纲解读

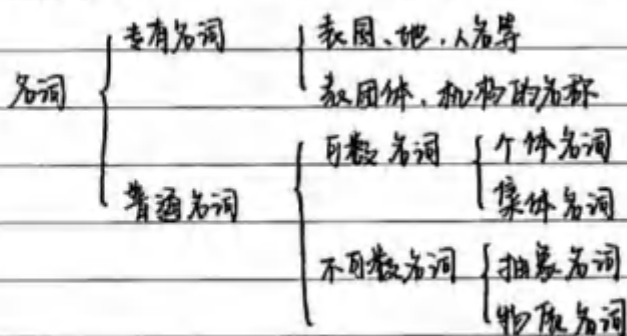
考点: 1. 名词 (1) 可数名词及其单复数 (2) 不可数名词 (3) 专有名词 (4) 名词所有格
2. 数词 (1) 序数词 (2) 基数 (3) 时间 (4) 不定数目

重点: 名词的词义辨析和在具体语境中的运用是重点, 该词更细, 题目句子结构更复杂, 数词的考查在所力部分尤其明显.

高考考点分布, 名词序词析 1 题.

二. 知识归纳

1. 名词的分类



2. 名词的数

① 单数名词变为复数名词

a. 以 -o 结尾, 一般加 -s, 以下加 -es.

Negroes, heroes, volcanoes, potatoes, tomatoes.

记忆: 黑人英雄在火山吃土豆西红柿, 一般有生命和物件加 es

注: volcanos 也正确.

b. 以 -s 或 -fe 结尾, 一般加 -s, 以下特殊, 不或 fe 变为 ves.



thieves, wives, knives, leaves, shelves, wolves, halves

记忆: 小偷和他妻子手里拿着刀子和一片树叶站在架子上, 把狼劈成两半.

C. 合成词变复数, 一般将主体名词变复数, 无主体名词, 最后一部分变复数.

sons-in-law 女婿 story tellers 讲故事的人 housewives 主妇

passers-by 过路人 breakfasts 早餐

② 下列名词常作不可数名词 (并非绝对)

fun, advice, weather, progress, information, bread, butter, baggage, equipment, homework, furniture, practice, wealth

③ 有些名词复数形式表特别含义.

papers 文件, 论文, 报纸, 试卷 drinks 饮料 manners 礼貌

times 时代

works 工厂, 著作

pains 努力

arms 武器

waters 水域

damages 赔偿金

④ 单复数同形

means 方式

works 工厂

fruit 水果

series 系列

crossroad 十字路口

fish 鱼

⑤ 集体名词的数 (参见“主谓一致”专题)

3. 名词的格

① 所有格的两种形式:

a. 在名词末尾加 -'s: Tom's car, children's education, a days meeting

b. 介词 of 加名词: a friend of you, 多为无生命的名词.

② 双重所有格



a. 名词 + of + 名词所有格. a friend of my father's

b. 名词 + of + 名词物主代词. some friends of mine.

C. 概念及用法

· 表部分概念，of 前通常有数量上的限制 a, an, one, two, some, several, no, few...

eg. Some friends of my brother's will come to join us.

· 表赞赏或厌恶等感情色彩时，of 前通常有指示代词 this, that, these, those

eg. The little cat of your sister's is really a dear.

你妹妹的这只小猫真惹人爱。

That dog of Mike's is always making troubles.

迈克的那只狗总惹麻烦。

注意：部分名词的所有格不用's 或 of 名词来表示。

用 to 表示。

教法提示：部分名词的所有格是用 to 表示

钥匙、桥梁和路、出入口的所有格用 to。

① 门的钥匙：the key to the door

② 这个问题的答案：the answer to the question

③ 通向知识的桥梁：the bridge to knowledge

④ 去学校的路：the way to the school

⑤ 这座大楼的出口：the exit to the building

⑥ 这个大厅的入口：the entrance to the hall

通常考查名词所有格的题很少，

但是用 to 表示的考查的很多，此
处为重点。

4. 名词作定语

① 一般用单数形式，即便意义上是复数 (如 shoes) 或总作复数的名词 (如 trousers)

也是如此。

shoe repairers 修鞋的人

book marks 书签

radio programs 电台节目

trouser pockets 裤子上的口袋

* 有例外: sports, customs, arms, clothes, sales, accounts.

如: a sports car 一辆赛车

a sales director 一个销售经理

a customs officer 一个海关官员

an accounts department 一个会计部门



arms production 武器生产

a clothes shop 一家服装店

② "man/woman + n" 变复数时, 作定语的 man/woman 和中心词都要变复数:

men teachers 男老师

women engineers 女工程师

*5. 名词作表语、宾补或同位语时, 若名词是表示唯一的职务、头衔时, 前面不加冠词 (考得非常多, 前面在冠词专题中已经提到过, 此处再细讲一遍)

Tom ^{系动词} became ^{表语} monitor of our class.

汤姆成了我们班的班长。(作表语)

Tom (, monitor of our class) left school.

我们班的班长汤姆离校了。(作同位语)

We chose Tom ^{宾语} ^{宾补} monitor of our class.

我们选汤姆当我们班的班长。(作宾补)

6. 几组常考名词辨析

① cause, reason, excuse

cause 是造成一种事实或现象的原因、起因, 后接名词; reason 是说明一种看法或行为的理由; excuse 意为“借口”, 后加介词。 → 辨析常考, 这三个词中只有 cause 后加介词。

如: 第5讲词义辨析

Carelessness is the usual cause of fire.

火灾往往是由粗心引起的。

You must tell him the reason why you won't accept his offer.

你必须告诉他你不愿意接受他的提议的原因。

late again! What's your excuse of this time?

又迟到了, 这次你的借口是什么?

② mistake, error, fault

三个词都有“错误、过错”的意思, 但 mistake 几乎等于 error,

只不过 error 更正式, 更常用于书面语, 此外, error 强调“逻辑方

面的过失”, 如: the error of his youth 他年轻时犯的过失。而 fault

则强调“性格上的小缺点”, 如: You only fault it that you

want concentrate 你唯一的缺点就是注意力不集中。

但以上三个词在一些固定短语中不可混用, 如:

an error of judgment (判断错误); by mistake (错误地); find fault with... (找茬儿、挑剔); it is

someone's fault... (是某人的过错)。

不如 6!



by mistake 与 find fault with 是非常好的词组, 请务必使用。

② sight, view, scene, scenery.

sight 意思是：目光；视力；视野；看到；景物；供参观或游览的地方；情景；景象。

view 是动词，指“从某一点或从某处看到的场面、景物，尤其是美丽的自然风景”。它还可以表示“风景画”、“风景照片”。

scene 和 view 一样，也是名词。它通常指“局部的、具体的风景、景被”，但更有可能包括人或反动的状态，它还可以表示戏剧、电影或叙述中的“现实生活中的场景”、“场面”、“情景”。

scenery 是一个不可数名词，是大自然风景的总称，其中包含有许多个 scene。如：

Birds have better sight than dogs. 鸟比狗有更好的视力。

We have a fine view of the lake from our hotel window. 从旅馆的窗口我们可以看到湖面美丽的风景。

There are many beautiful scenes in the out-of-town park. 郊外公园里有各处美丽的风景。

Guilin is world-famous for her fine scenery.

桂林以其美丽的风景闻名于世。

④ habit, custom, customs

habit 指一个人在长时间内逐渐养成的、一时不易改变的“行为”、“习惯”；custom 则指习俗，或经过一个长时间过程而形成的“风俗”、“习惯”；customs 为复数名词，意思是“关税”、“进口税”，与海关同义并在此处通用时，表示“海关”的意思。如：

He has formed the habit of saving money. 他养成了存钱的习惯。

Social customs vary greatly from country to country. 各国的风俗习惯很不一样。

The officials in the Customs at Beijing Airport are very polite. 北京机场海关的官员很有礼貌。

the Customs 海关

⑤ award, reward, prize.

前二者既可作名词也可作动词。award 作名词时，意为“奖品”、“奖金”。作动词时，常用于 award sb. sth. 或 award sth. to sb. 结构。

reward 作名词时，意为“报酬”、“奖励”、“报答”。作动词时，常用于 reward sb. (for) sth. 结构。如：

The film awards are presented annually. 电影奖每年颁发一次。

A reward was offered for the return of the passport. 为找回护照，(他)提供了一笔酬金。

How can I reward you for your help? 我怎样才能报答你的帮助?

They awarded scholarship to the best students.

prize: n. 奖品、奖金

v. 珍视、珍藏、估价、评价

eg. We prize honor above money. 我们珍视荣誉甚于金钱。

adj. 得奖的；作为奖品的

eg. a prize novel 得奖小说

短语 be awarded a prize of 因...而获奖
win/carry off a prize



⑥ cloth, clothes, clothing

- 首先应区分开 cloth 与 clothes / clothing: cloth 表示“布”、“布料”，是不可数名词。如：
 She bought some cloth to make herself a dress. 她买了些布要给自己做一件连衣裙。
 表示用作某种特殊用途的布(如：幕布、台布、抹布等)，是可数名词，如：
 Clean the wid windows with a soft cloth. 用块软布擦窗子。

二 clothes 和 clothing 均可表示“衣服”，用作“衣服”的统称，但在用法上有差别：
 1. clothes 是一个没有单数形式的名词，其前不可加不定冠词，也不可加数词，但可用 some, these, many, few 等词修饰，如：

正: those clothes / few clothes / many clothes
 误: a clothes / two clothes / three clothes

a suit of clothes

2. clothing 是不可数名词，如：

an article of clothes

They wear very little clothing. 他们衣服穿得很少。

3. 比较而言: clothes 的含义比较具体，而 clothing 的含义则比较抽象。从语体上看，clothing 比 clothes 更正式。比较：

I changed my clothes. 我换了衣服。

He is washing his clothes. 他在洗衣服。

Our clothing protects us against the cold. 我们的衣服可以御寒。

We are well provided with food and clothing. 我们吃得好，穿得好。

若不考虑其细微区别，两者常可换用(注：一个是复数，一个不可数)。如：

He spent a lot of money on clothes [clothing]. 他花了很多钱买衣服。

⑦ Journey, voyage, trip, tour, travel

journey: 指从一地到另一地，通常指陆地上的长距离“旅行”，有时也可表示经常走的或长或短的“路程”。只作名词。

eg I took a journey from Beijing to Shanghai last year.

* — How long is your journey to school? — Only about 10 minutes.

voyage. 主要指远距离水上旅行，也可指空中旅行，意为“航海”“航空”“旅行”等。只作名词。



eg. She usually gets seasick during voyage.

They made a voyage across the Pacific by air.

② 不精确数字的表示法.

...多: over / above / more than

不到...: below / under / less than

大约...: about / around / some / more or less / something like / or so他大约40岁. He is ^v40 or so.

半...: half a day = a half day

一个半...: a day and a half = one and a half days

两个半...: two days and a half = two and a half days

一两...: one or two days = a day or two

两三天...: a couple of days

三番五次 time (again) and again / over and over again / time after time

三天两头 every other day / almost every day

三年五载 from three to five years / in a few years

三言两语 in a few words / in one or two words

三三两两 in twos or threes / in knots

③ 不定数目表示法

dozen of 与代词宾格、定冠词、指示代词、形容词性物主代词、名词所有格连用时不能省.

two dozen of } them

两打 } the apples

一般一打12个 } these apples

my apples

Tom's apples

dozens / scores / hundreds / thousands / millions of + 名词



数词 (a, two, three, four ...) dozen / score / hundred / thousand / million

Tips. 前面无数词 加s. 前面有数词, 不加s.

④ 数量增减

by +

分数	表示增加/减少(到)...
百分数	eg. The number of our school increased by 50%.
数字	增加了 50%.

to +

分数	表示增加/减少(到)...
百分数	eg. The number of our school increased to 50%.
数字	增加到 50%.

⑤ 表示百分数时可用 percent 或 percentage.

percent: 数词 + percent + of + sth. 此时后面谓语的单复数^以percent 后面的主语为主.

- eg. 1. 2 percent of the apples are eaten.
 2. 2 percent of the apples is eaten.
 3. 2 percent of the water is drunk.

percentage: The percentage of sth is (时态暂时不考虑, 但都是单数形式)

eg. The percentage of the

students	is 46.
water	

⑥ 数量概念修饰词的用法

只修饰可数名词: many = a great / good many
 = not a few = quite a few
 = no few = a number of
 = dozens of = scores of = a good few
 * = (large) great numbers of

} oranges 许多桔子



* many = an orange -- 许多桔子
 many a + 可数名词单数形式

只修饰不可数名词

little food 没多少食物

a little food 一点食物 → little

a bit of food 少量食物

much = not a little

= quite a little = no little

★ = a great (good) deal of

★ = a great amount of

} food 大量食物

修饰可数和不可数名词.

a lot of = lots of

= a large supply of

= supplies of

★ = a large quantity of

= large quantities of

★ = plenty of

} paper and books



三. 例题讲解.

1. He gained his _____ by painting _____ of famous writers.

A. wealth ; work B. wealths ; works C. wealths ; work D. wealth ; works

选 D. wealth 是不可数名词, 无复数形式

work 作“作品, 著作”讲时, 是可数, 用 works.

2. James took the magazines off the little table to make _____ for the television. (天津高考)

A. room B. area C. field D. position

选 A. 固定搭配 make room for 为...腾出空间

3. Those who suffer from headache will find they get _____ from this medicine. (山东高考)

A. relief B. safety C. defence D. ~~shelter~~ shelter

选 A. 这是词义辨析题. 句意: 那些头痛患者会发现他们通过这种药减轻疼痛.

relief 缓解, 减轻

defence 保护

safety 安全

shelter 庇护

4. Teachers have to constantly update their knowledge in order to maintain their professional _____. (2011 江苏)

A. consequence B. independence C. competence D. intelligence

选 C. 这是词义辨析题.

consequence 后果

competence 能力, 胜任

independence 独立

intelligence 才智



5. The _____ shoes were covered with mud. So I asked them to take them off before they got into _____ car. (江西高考)

A. girls'; Tom's B. girls'; Toms' C. girls'; Tom's D. girl's; Toms'

选C. 考查名词所有格

由下文 them 可知女孩不是一个, 所以所有格是 girls', 排除 A-D.

再根据 Tom 的所有格是 Tom's, 因此选 C.

6. It took us quite a long time to get here. It was _____ journey.

A. a four hour B. a four hour's C. a four-hour D. four hours

选C. 固定用法 It was a four-hour journey
a four hours'

若B选项改为 a four hours' 也正确.

7. About one third of the population in Beijing and Shanghai _____ netizens, but in poorer areas, only three or four percent _____ online.

A. is; is B. are; are C. are; is D. is; are

选B. 第一个空 population 看后面的 netizens, 是复数, 三分之一的人口是网民, 因此用 are.

第二个空考查知识归纳百分数的讲解, 其中题中在 percent 后面省略了 netizens, 修饰的 netizens 是复数, 因此用 are.



专题三 代词

一. 考纲解读

考点: 1. 人称代词 2. 物主代词 3. 反身代词 4. 指示代词
5. 不定代词 6. 疑问代词

重点: 不定代词、替代词及代词it的用法和区别; 在真实语言环境中正确使用不定代词、指示代词、人称代词等; it, that, one是热点。

高考考点分布: 替代词1题。

二. 知识归纳

1. 人称代词

① 当说话者不清楚或不必要知道所谈对象的性别时, 可以用it来表示。

eg. It's a lovely baby. Is it a boy or a girl?

② 人称代词有时也可作名词

eg. It's not a she; it's a he. 那不是个女孩, 是个男孩。

③ 在没有谓语动词的句中, 人称代词常用宾格。

eg. — Glad to meet you. — Me, too.

④ 代词they (不分性别) 指代已提到过的一些人或事物, 在口语中还可代替he or she. 此外they还可泛指一般人。

eg. The Browns phoned. They're coming round this evening.

2. 物主代词



① 物主代词即人称代词所有格形式, 可分为形容词性物主代词(my, your,

his, her, its, our, their) 和名词性物主代词(mine, yours, his, hers).

Its, ours, theirs) 形容词性物主代词相对形容词, 只能作名词或动名词的定语.

eg. This is our classroom.

② 名词性物主代词 ~ "形容词性物主代词 + 名词", 可单独作主语、宾语、表语.

还可与名词及介词连用, 构成双重所有格. 即 a/an / this / that / these / some / such
which / another / every + 名词 + of + 名词性物主代词.

eg. Some friends of mine will attend my birthday party.

3. 反身代词.

① 反身代词	{	作宾语 动宾	Tom taught himself Chinese.
		介宾	The boy is old enough to take care of himself.
		作表语	She is not quite herself today.
		作同位语	I myself can repair the bike.

② 含有反身代词的惯用语.

a. 与介词连用

for oneself (亲自): You'll have to see if he has gone to the school ~.

of oneself (自动地): The computer many shut off ~.

in oneself (本质上): Jim is not bad ~, but he is a little shy.

by oneself (独自) = on one's own

beside oneself (由于气愤、激动等而手足发软, 怔忡) = almost mad with anger / excitement

to oneself (独自享用): One would rather have a bedroom ~. 每个人都愿意有自己的卧室

b. 与动词连用

enjoy oneself: have a good time

Behave yourself! 规矩点!



absent oneself 缺课, 缺勤

devote oneself ① 专心, 献身于 + Ving
② 介词

★ apply oneself to 专心致志于

★ adapt oneself to 适应于

treat oneself to sth. 用某物款待自己

make oneself at home 不要客气

seat oneself (= sit) 坐

★ think for oneself (= form one's own opinion) 独立思考形成某人自己的看法

boast oneself 自夸

★ come to oneself = regain self-control 恢复自制力/清醒: 苏醒过来

help oneself to sth. = take sth. for oneself 擅自取用

He is not himself today. 他今天身体不舒服

When he woke up, he found himself in hospital. (find oneself + 地点
发现自己不知不觉来到...)

4. 疑问代词

① what, who 的区别

一般来说, what 问职业、地位; who 问姓名、身份。

— What is the man over there? — He is a doctor.

— Who is that man? — He is her husband.

② what, which 的区别

what 是在未知范围内进行选择, 后面不可限呼;

which 是在已知范围内进行选择, 后可限呼。

What do you want to read? (无范围)

Which is bigger, an elephant or a horse? (有范围)



③ whatever, whichever, whoever 用法

whatever, whichever, whoever 分别为 what, which, who 的强调形式, 相

与于 what / which / who on earth. 意为: 到底什么 / 哪一个 / 谁.

Whatever do you want? 你到底想要什么?

④ what 习惯用法

What is {
 the population?
 the distance?
 the price?
 your address?
 your attitude?
 the height / weight / depth / length / width / size?

5. It 的用法

① 用于强调结构.

It is / was ^{永远不变} + 被强调部分 + that + 句子的其他成分, 可强调主语、宾语、表语、状语.

② 指时间、距离、自然现象、环境情况、某种感觉 (疼、痒等)

It is half past two.

It is 6 miles to the hospital.

It is raining now.

Where does it hurt? 哪心痛?

③ 指代前面所提到过的事物、事情、群体、想法、性别不明或性别被认为不重要的人或动物、未指明但谈话双方都明白的事情或情况.

— I've broken a plate. — It doesn't matter.



④ 作形式主语或形式宾语, 而把真正的主语或宾语放在后面, 真正的主语或宾语往往由从句、动名词、不定式充当.

形式主语 1) 不定式: It's not easy to learn a foreign language.

2) 动名词: It's { no good / use
interesting
fun / easy
difficult / hard
exciting } doing sth.

3) that 从句 It's { a pity / fact / shame
no wonder
impossible / likely
necessary / important
believed / thought / hoped } that

形式宾语: I find it easy to get on with Jim.

* 常跟 it 作形式宾语的动词: believe / think / discover / guess / feel / notice /
suppose / find / make

* 习惯用法: I { hate it that ...
appreciate

* 特殊结构: take it for granted that / see to it that / owe it to ... that ...

认为...是理所当然的 务必... 多亏幸亏

take it that ... / count on it that ...

理解为... 相信...

⑤ 习语、固定搭配.

* When it comes to ... 提到

As someone puts it, ... 像某人所说的那样



You will catch it. 你会受罚

I can't help it. 我没有办法.

foot it 步行去

* take it easy 别着急

get it 懂得

call it a day 停止一天的工作

watch it 注意

6. 不定代词

① both, all, either, any, neither, none 的用法

* 都 任何 都不

两者

both

either

neither

三者或三者以上

all

any

none

* ② none, nothing, nobody (no one) 用法区别 (此处容易混淆而且区分困难, 与潜课, 再总结)

none: 可指人/物, 表特指, 常回答 how many / how much 引导的疑问句.

nobody: 指人, 表泛指, 常回答 who 引导的疑问句.

nothing: 指物, 表泛指, 常回答 what 引导的疑问句.

none: 常与前面 some / any / every + 名词连用

nothing: 常与前面 something / anything / everything 连用

no one: 常与前面 ~~somebody~~ / somebody / someone / everyone / everybody / anyone / anybody 连用

* 只有 none 后面有限词, 其他不可 None of us heard his voice.

③ any, every 的区别

any

every

not any

not every

(三个或三个以上)任何

(三个或三个中)每一个

任何人/物都不/全部否定

并非每个(部分否定)



every students = all the students

④ each, every 的区别

	词性	意义	功能
every	形容词	一个或一个每个	定语
each	代词, 形容词	两个或两个以上每个	定语, 宾语, 同位语, 定语

* each of + 名词 + V. 单数 Each of the tickets costs 10 dollars.

each 作同位语不影响 V 的单复数 The tickets each costs 10 dollars.

不可用 not each 表部分否定 Every man is not honest.

= Not every man is honest. 并非每个人都诚实

⑤ 全部否定, 部分否定

全部肯定: all / both / everyone / everybody / everything / every + 名词

全部否定: no one / none / nobody / nothing / not ... any / no + 名词

* 部分否定: not A 视而在全部肯定的句子中, 不管位置.

not 与常指形容词如 everyone everywhere, always, wholly, altogether 连用

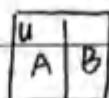
eg. * Not all of them smoke = All of them don't smoke. 部分否定

All of the boys are clever, but none of them can work out it. 全否

⑥ one, another, the other, some, others, the others 的区别

	一个/一些	另外一个/一些	两个中剩余的一个/一些
单数	one	another	the other
复数	some	others	the others

用图表表示:



⑦ 整体 U, B, A, B 两部分组成, C 是独立于 U 的另外一个
若把 A 取走, B 就是 the other / others
C 就是 another / others

相关词组: some other day = another day



3 more days = another 3 days 再三天

* the other + 可数名词 (单/复)

the other of + 不可数名词

else 只能放在不定代词或特殊疑问词后.

① one, ones, the one, the ones, that, those 的区别

one: 替代前面出现的泛指的单数名词 \approx a/an + 单数名词, *同类不同物

ones: - - - - 泛指的复数名词

the one: - - - - 特指的单数名词, 有些时候用 that 替代

the ones: - - - 特指的复数名词, - - those - -

that: - - - 特指的单数名词/复数名词 \approx the + 单数/复数/不可数

eg. Mr Zhang gave me a very valuable present, one that I had never seen.

Mr Zhang gave me many presents, ones that I had never seen.

The book on the desk is better than that / the one under the desk.

The books on the desk are better than those / the ones under ...

Few pleasures can equal that of a cool drink on a hot day.

② many, much, few, little, a few, a little 区别

	多	少
复数名词	many	few
不可数名词	much	little
	肯	否
复数名词	a few	few
不可数名词	a little	little

③ 与复合不定代词构成的习惯搭配.

* nothing but 只是 * anything but 根本不

He is someone (somebody) / something / not anybody

他是个重要人物 / 出色的人物 / 普普通通的人



She is something of a doctor. 可以说是

He is a scientist or something. 他是个科学家之类的人物

三. 例题讲解

1. I got this bicycle ~~for~~ _____: My friend gave it to me when she bought a new one. (2011. 大纲卷)

A. everything B. something C. anything D. nothing

选 D. 句意: 我免费得到了这辆自行车; 我的朋友买了辆新的就把这辆给~~我~~了。
for nothing 不花钱, 免费.

2. There is _____ in his words. We should have to a try. (2011. 四川)

A. something B. anything C. nothing D. everything

选 A. 句意: 他说的话有道理, 我们应该试试.

there is something in sth. 某物有道理.

3. We have various summer camps for your holidays. You can choose _____ based on your own interests.

A. either B. each C. one D. it

选 C. 句意: 我们有各种各样的暑假夏令营, 你可以根据自己的兴趣选择一个.

either: 两者中任取一个 each: 每个 one: 泛指同类事物或人中的一个

it: 特指上文提到的某人或某物.

4. We feel _____ our duty to make our country a better place.

A. It B. this C. that D. one (2011. 天津)

选 A. 句意: 我们觉得使我们国家成为一个更好的地方是我们的责任。四个选项^均为代词.

It 作形式宾语, 指代 to make our country a better place

this 指下文将涉及的内容

that 指上文提到的内容

one 指同类不同物



this, that, one 都不能作形式宾语.

5. Why don't you bring _____ to his attention that you're too ill to work on? (2011. 江西)

A. that B. It C. this D. him

选B. 句意: 你为什么不让他注意到这一点, 你病得太厉害不能继续工作?

It作形式宾语, 真正宾语是that从句.

Tips: 关于代词It考得较多, 基本理论理解即可, 主要是多做类似词, 读题感觉, 刷题是王道!

6. Surprisingly, Susan's beautiful hair reached below her knees and made _____ almost an overcoat for her. (2011. 安徽)

A. them B. her C. itself D. herself

选C. 句意: 令人惊讶的是, 苏珊美丽的长发一直垂到她的膝盖以下, 使尾看起来像是她的一件大衣.

them: 他/她/它们 her: 她的 itself: 后自己 herself: 她自己

根据句意, 后处所指向的应该是Susan's beautiful hair, 不可数名词,

因此排除A. B. D. 故选itself.

7. — Would you get me a bar of chocolate from the kitchen, dear?
— _____ one?

A. other B. Every C. Another D. More

选C. 句意: "亲爱的, 请你从厨房给我拿条巧克力来好吗?" "又要一条吗?"

another, 又-, 再-, 常置于数词前, another one = one more

8. Neither side is prepared to talk to _____ unless we can smooth things over between them. (全国卷)



A. Others B. the other C. another D. one other

选B. 句意: 除非我们能消除他们间的障碍, 否则双方没有方便意向另一方谈话。
由 neither (两者中没有) 可知是“两者”, 故选 the other, 表两者中另外一个。
others 泛指其他人; another 另一, 再一, 又一 one other X 无此搭配

9. He had lost his temper and his health in the war and never found _____ of them again. (重庆高考)

A. neither B. either C. each D. all

选B. 句意: 在战争年代他脾气大变, 身体也垮了, 再也没恢复过来。

句中只提到两样东西, temper 和 health, 故排除三者或三者以上的 all. each 意为每一个, 与句意不符, 排除 C.

由于 neither 是否定, 若选 A, 双重否定表肯定, 句子变为 he found either of them 显然与句意不符, 排除 A.



专题四. 形容词和副词

一. 考纲解读

考点: 1. 形容词 (比较级, 最高级) 2. 副词 (比较级, 最高级)

重点: 掌握形容词副词的原级, 比较级, 最高级用法, 在具体语境中选择恰当的词使用; 形容词作状语; 多个形容词副词排序, enough 用法.

高考考点分析: 形容词/副词比较等级 > 题

形容词/副词排序 > 题

二. 知识归纳

1. 常见的复合形容词

hard-working 勤劳的	five-star 五星级的	kind-hearted 好心的
man-made 人造的	three-legged 三条腿的	ordinary-looking 相貌平平的
time-consuming 耗时的	five-year-old 五岁的	world-famous 世界闻名的
ready-made 现成的	red-hot 炽热的	well-known 广为人知的
four-storied / 4-storeyed 4层的	snow-white 白雪公主	snow-covered 白雪覆盖的
grass-eating 食草的	fast-changing 变化快的	

2. 形容词的位置

通常, 形容词放在被修饰的名词前作定语, 如 a brave boy 但是, 在下列情况下, 形容词要放在被修饰语的后边!

① 形容词作定语, 修饰由 some-, any-, every-, no- 和 -body, -thing, -one 等构成的复合不定代词, 需后置.

eg. There is nobody absent today.

Is there anything wrong with your car?



② 以 -able 或 -ible 结尾的形容词可置于由形容词最高级或 only 等词修饰的名词后

eg. That is the only solution possible.

④成对的形容词可以前置 (这是一个使用简单但有亮点的用法, 写作中运用很棒喔~)

eg. There was a huge room, simple and beautiful.

She sat in the snow, cold and happy.

⑤当“形容词+名词+不定式”构成的短语作定语时, 需前置.

eg. The teacher asked me a question too difficult to answer.

A man so difficult to please must be hard to work with.

取悦

⑥当 old, long, high, wide, deep 等词附有数量词或短语时作定语, 需前置.

eg. Yesterday, I saw a snake about a meter long.

3. 各个形容词作定语时的排列顺序.

(综合各类口诀, 选择了一种最方便记忆的~)

女好 美 小 高 状 (其) 新, 彩色 国 料 特别 (亲).

good/bad... beautiful... 大小 | 高低 形状 | | 新旧 颜色 国家 材料 用途 |
一般综合性的形容词 | 长短 | 境 | 老幼 | 无卷

注意, 在所有形容词前, 还有“限定词”, 分为前、中、后三位. 顺序为:

前位限定词: all / half / both / 分数 / 倍数

中位限定词: 冠词 / 指示代词 (this / that / these / those) / 物主代词 (my / your...)

后位限定词: 序数词 / 基数词 (为序后基)

eg. all these last few days 最近这些日子

指示 序 基

an old brown woolen carpet 一块破旧的棕色羊毛地毯.

冠 新 彩色 料



4. 英语中有些形容词既可作前置定语, 又可作后置定语, 但卷又不同.

{	the responsible man	可依赖的人
{	the man responsible	负责任的人
{	the present students	现在的学生
{	the students present	在场的学生
{	the absent students	心不在焉的学生
{	the students absent	缺席的学生
{	the concerned teachers	忧心忡忡的老师们
{	the teachers concerned ...	与...事情有关的老师们

5. 表语形容词.

可作表语, 宾语补足语, 后置定语, 一般不作前置定语, 但当其前有副词修饰时, 可作前置定语。

此类词有, 如: afraid, alone, awake, asleep, alive, alike, afloat, ashamed, well, sorry, unable, worth, sure. 大部分都是a开头尾~

eg. She was still alive after the accident.

She was the only person awake that night.

6. 形容词作状语.

表示伴随 or 结果, 不表动作方式.

eg. He returned home, safe and sound. 又出现了!

The fish rolled over, dead.

He is standing there, full of fear.

7. 副词在句首作评注性状语



eg. Fortunately, he was not drowned and was saved by the PLA (解放军)

此类常用词还有: Naturally (自然地), Obviously (明显地), Happily for her, (使她高兴的是)

8. 副词 enough 的用法

① 形容词/副词 + enough.

eg. Students brave enough to take this adventure course will certainly learn a lot of useful skills.

② 再...也不为过. cannot / can't 与 enough 连用

eg. You cannot be careful enough. 你再仔细也不为过.

* 另一种表达: cannot (never 等否定词) ... too ... 意思也是再...也不为过.

eg. I can't thank you too much. 太感谢你了.

You can never be too careful. 你再仔细也不为过.

9. 有些连词可作副词, 但放在句末, 如 though, (ever) since, in case 等.

eg. She promised to phone, I heard nothing, though.

= Though she promised to phone, I heard nothing.

He came to this school in 1980. He has been working here ever since.

= He has been working in this school since he came here in 1980.

10. 形容词与副词的比较用法.

① 同级比较: as ... as ..., not ... as / so ... as.

eg. He is a teacher as good as her.

= He is as a good^a teacher as her. 他和她都是好老师.

Henry does not have so/as many books as I have. Henry 的书不如我多.

★ 第一个 as 后面紧跟形容词, 不管肯定形式还是否定形式, 牢记例子.



as + 形容词 + as + 数量词 = 数量词 + 形容词

eg. as tall as 100 meters = 100 meters tall

还有一些带有 as... as 的固定用语, 其实并无比较之意, 注意区分.

as long as 有... 之久; 只要

as well as 既... 又...

as far as 到... 地点; 就... 而言

as good as = very nearly

as soon as -... 就

与... 一样, 几乎, 简直

★ 联想用法: might as well do sth. 倒不如干某事, 高中曾出现过几次~

go to (great) lengths to do sth. 竭尽全力做某事...

② 比较级

比较级的常用修饰语有: rather, much, still, even, far, any (疑问句/疑问句)

a lot, a little, a great deal, by far, a bit, three times.

用法一: "the + 比较级... the + 比较级..." 表示"越..., 越..."

eg. The more tickets you sell, the more money you will get.

The longer you stay, the better it will be.

用法二: "比较级 + and + 比较级" 表"越来越..."

eg. The new city is becoming more and more beautiful.

用法三: "the + 比较级 + of the two + 名词" 表"两个中较... 的".

eg. The shorter of the two girls is my sister.

用法四: 用 by 表示相差程度.

eg. She is taller than I by three inches. 她比我高三英寸.

= She is three inches taller than I.



用法五: "more... than" 的另一种意思, "与其..., 不如..."

eg. She is more shy than unfriendly. 与其说她不好, 不如说她害羞.

用法六：比较的对象不能相互包含。

比较级 + than +

- any other + 单数名词
- all (the) other + 复数名词
- anyone else
- any of the other + 复数名词
- the rest of + 复数名词或不可数名词。

China is larger than any other country in Asia. 中国比亚洲别国大。
any country in Africa. 中国比非洲任何国家大。

用法七：用 that, those 指代相同对象。

eg. The climate here is warmer than that of Shanghai.

The radios made in our factory are better than those in your factory.

用法八：省略

eg. Tom's composition, if not better (省略 than Jack's), is at least as good as Jack's. 汤姆的作文如果不比杰克的更好，那就至少和他的一样好。

用法九：一些带有 than 的词组辨析。

- 1) more than
- ① = over + 数词 (意为：不只，超过) eg. ~ one student 不只一个学生。
 - ② = very + adj. (意为：很，非常) eg. ~ nice = very nice
 - = most + adj. (意为：很，非常) 还记得在冠词专题中讲到的，most 前没有 the，则表示 very 吗？
 - ③ more ... than ... (意为：与其说...，不如说)
 - ④ more than sb. can/could do sth. (表否定)
 - ⑤ no more than = only (意为：仅仅)
 - not more than (意为：不高于)



* 联想: { no better than 与...一样不好

选择 { not better than 不比...好

常考! { no worse than 与...一样好

{ not worse than 不比...差

more or less: almost (意为: 几乎)

far more + adj: 极其, 非常

2) rather than: 而不是

other than { 除了: except (不包括本身) 注意: besides 也是除了, 但
不同于: different from 是包含本身。

② 最高级

常见修饰词有: 序数词, by far, nearly, almost, by no means, not really, not quite, nothing like.

重要用法: 否定 + 比较级 = 最高级

eg. He has never spent a more worrying day. 他度过了最担心的一天。

11. 下列形容词作表语, 通常不用“人”作主语。

possible, impossible, probable, necessary, convenient, inconvenient.

eg. ✓ It is probable that it will rain today. (第一个它是形式主语, 第二个它指天气)

✗ It is probable to rain today.

✓ It is likely to rain today. (它指天气)

✓ It is not convenient to work at weekends.

✗ Please come here if you are convenient.

✓ You can go there if it is necessary.

改成 you are 就 ✗.



12. 易混形容词、副词比较

- ① $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{too much (= much) + adj} \text{ 许多 } \text{ too much homework 太多作业.} \\ \text{much too = (too) + adj} \text{ 太 } \text{ I've much too happy. 我太高兴了.} \end{array} \right.$

② common, usual, normal, ordinary

common: 普通的, 随时会发生的; 共同的, 与 rare (罕见的, 稀有的) 相反.

usual: 惯常的, 通常的.

normal: 符合标准的, 正规的, 正式的

ordinary: 普通的, 一般的, 与 special 相反

regular: 有规律的, 定时的, 定期的

eg. common sense 常识

Yesterday he got up ~~earlier~~ earlier than usual, for it was not an ordinary day for him. 昨天他比平时起得早, 因为昨天对他来说是个不寻常的日子.

What is the normal body temperature?

Trains will run at regular intervals.

③ nearly, almost, hardly.

1) almost 可与 any, no, nobody, never, nothing 搭配, 但 nearly 却不能与这些词搭配, 常用 hardly any, hardly anybody 代替 almost no, almost nobody.

2) 否定词 not 可放在 nearly 之前, 即 not nearly (意为: 一点也不, 相差甚远), 但无 not almost. X

3) almost, nearly 可置于表极端之意的形容词前, 但不能修饰不具极端之意的词.



eg. That is a(n) almost / nearly perfect plan.

④ fairly, quite, rather, very, pretty.

1) 语气由弱到重排列: fairly < quite < rather / pretty < very

fairly: 与褒义词连用, 译为“还算, 勉强过的去”。如果看电影 fairly good, 还不错。

quite: 译为“颇, 相当”, 如果电影 quite good, 很不错, 值得看, 但不是最好。

rather / pretty: 意为“尚, 相当” (pretty 不如 rather 正式) 可与褒义词或贬义词连用。

与褒义词连用, 表愉快心情, 与贬义词连用, 表不赞成, 不满意。

very: 意为“很, 非常”。

2) 这几个词中, 只有 rather 可与比较级、副词 too (太) 连用。

rather too: 太

rather + adj (比较级) 相当

* quite 有时与比较级连用, 仅限于 quite better (身体好)

3) rather / quite 可直接修饰动词。

eg. I quite agree with you.

I rather hate the book.

4) 在冠词+形容词+名词结构中, rather / quite 通常在冠词前, 也可在冠词后, 但 very / fairly 只在冠词后, 形容词前。

eg. It's quite / rather a good idea. = It's a quite / rather good idea.

* 若无形容词, 只能放在冠词前。

eg. It was quite a success.



5) quite 表示“完全”, 用于 right, wrong, ready, full, empty, perfect, impossible,

alone, unique 之前。eg. You're quite wrong.

⑤ possible, probably, likely

possible: 客观上的可能性, 可能性小

probably: 可能性比 possible 大, "很可能, 大概", 指有实际依据, 逻辑上合理.

likely: 从外表迹象判断.

It is possible / probably / likely + that 从句

It is possible (for sb.) to do sth.

sb./sth. be likely to do sth.

⑥ 两种形式的副词.

集体中有的副词兼有两种形式: 一种是与形容词同形; 另一种是在该形容词后面加副词后缀 -ly 构成. 这两种形式的副词在词义和用法上有一定的差异, 有的甚至完全不同.

常见的这类副词有: firm 稳固地, firmly 坚定地; direct 径直地, directly 恰好直接, 坦率地; free 自由地, 随意地, freely 自由自在, 随意地; flat 平直地, flatly 直截了当地; short 突然 (= suddenly), shortly 不久; even 甚至, evenly 平均地; clean 整洁地, 清楚地, cleanly 清楚地, 干净利落; clear 彻底地, 完全地, clearly 清楚地, 明显地; close 近地, closely 紧紧地, 密切地; easy 容易地, easily 容易地; dead 死地, 完全地, deadly 死地, 非常; fair 公平地, 适当地, fairly 相当; hard 努力地, hardly 几乎没有, 几乎不; most 最, mostly 大部分, 主要地; right 正确地, 径直地, 立即, rightly 公正地, 合理地, 正确地; high 高地, highly 高地; just 正好, justly 公正地; late 迟, 晚, lately 最近; near 近, nearly 几乎; pretty 相当, prettily 优美地; sharp 突然地, 急剧地, sharply 尖锐地.

固定搭配

eg. He is dead/blind drunk.

他喝得面红耳赤大醉.

The book is deadly dull.

这本书非常枯燥.

固定搭配

He is wide awake.

他完全没有睡意.



三. 例题讲解

1. Nowadays, there is a _____ increase in children's creativity, for they are greatly encouraged to develop their talents. (2011. 福建)

A. sharp B. slight C. natural D. modest

选A. 句意: 现在的孩子创造力剧增, 因为我们都非常鼓励他们发展自己的天赋。

sharp 急剧的; slight 稍微的; natural 自然的; modest 谦逊的

这是形容词的词义辨析题, 根据语境作答。主要还要靠背单词, 如果实在有不认识的词, 就用排除法, 但一般不会有这种情况, 词义辨析主要是考查对各个词的理解, 还有一些易混形容词的区别。

10组重要词汇辨析:

① respectable 值得尊敬的 respective 各自的, 分别的

respectful 尊敬他人的 respected 受尊敬的

② lively: 生机勃勃的; 活泼的:

living 修饰人、动物, 只作表语, 前置定语, 意为活像, 活生生的(在某个时候是活的)

alive 修饰人、动物, 只作表语, 补语, 后置定语, 意为活着的(未来有死的可能)

live adj. 修饰动物, 只作前置定语, 意为活的, 生动的, 精力充沛的, 现场的。

eg. a living dog / the living

live broadcast 现场直播

He is still alive. 他仍活着。

③ immigrant 移入者 emigrant 移出者 migrant 移民

2. — How was your recent trip to Sichuan?

— I've never had _____ one before. (2011. 四川)

A. a pleasant B. a more pleasant C. a most pleasant D. the most pleasant



选B. 考查形容词的比较级中否定用法, 表示最高级, 故选B.

句意: "你最近的四川之旅如何?" "我从未有过这么快乐的旅行".

3. — The film is, I have to say, not a bit interesting.

— Why? It's _____ than the films I have ever seen. (2011.3250)

A. far more interesting B. much less interesting C. no more interesting D. any less interesting

选A. 句意: "我不得不说这部电影一点也不有趣。" "为什么它比我曾看过的电影有趣多了?"

根据 why? 可知第二句与第一句观点相反, 即"认为电影有趣", 只有A最有趣

D项错误, 无此用法, any只用于疑问句、否定句中。

4. It took us quite a long time to get the amusement park. It was _____ journey. (上海高考)

A. three hour B. three-hour C. a three-hour D. three hours

选C. "一段三个小时的路程"有两种表达方法: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{a three-hour journey} \\ \text{three } \overset{\text{hours}}{\text{hours}} \text{ journey} \end{array} \right.$

5. This _____ girl is Linda's cousin. (北京高考)

A. pretty little Spanish B. Spanish little pretty C. Spanish pretty little D. little pretty Spanish

选A. 这是形容词排序题, 背诵: 好美小高状复新, 颜色国籍特别亲。

pretty ↓ little ↓ Spanish


6. Alan is a careful driver, but he drives _____ of my friends. (上海高考)

A. more carefully B. the most carefully C. less carefully D. the least carefully.

选D. 句意: Alan是个谨慎的司机, 但在我朋友中他开车最粗心。but表转折, 转折处填的是粗心, 又因为有of my friends作限定, 所以用最高级。

7. Although she didn't know Boston well, she made her way _____ to the Building.

A. easy enough B. enough easy C. easily enough D. enough easily

 选C. 若紧靠动词的位置, enough修饰副词, make her way是动词, 排除

专题五 动词

一. 考纲解读

考点: 1. 动词的基本形式 2. 系动词 3. 及物动词、不及物动词 4. 助动词

重点: 常见动词及动词近义词的辨析; 动词及动词词组在特定语境中的灵活应用是考查热点.

高考考点分布: 词语辨析 2 题, 词组辨析 1 题.

二. 知识归纳

1. 重点动词及动词词组归纳

① add

1) add ... to: 把... 加到... 上
 If you add 5 to 5, you get 10.
 Five added to five is 10.

2) add to: 增加

3) add up to: 加起来总共

4) add up: 把... 加起来与总数相等; 说得通, 言之有理 (= make sense)

② agree

1) agree on 双方就... 达成共识

2) agree to do sth. 同意做某事

3) agree to the plan / decision / arrangement 同意

4) agree with you / what you said / your advice 同意

5) agree with 食物/天气等适合某人 The climate here doesn't ~ me.

和... 一致 Your story agrees with what I have heard.

③ break



1) 违背, 违反 break one's word / promise / the law / the rule

2) 垮了, 指身体或精神 His health broke.

3) break away from | 断绝往来, 脱离. He ~ his old friends.
| 改掉(习惯). I should ~ such habits.

4) break down | (计划, 谈判等) 失败
| 崩溃, 垮掉 Her health broke down under the pressure of work.
| 化学分解. (如化学分子的分解, 食物在体内的分解)
| (机器或车辆) 出故障

5) break up | 分开, 分散 The crowd 'broke' up.
| 解散, 解体 the meeting broke up. 散会
| 物理分解 (如棍子断了, 镜子碎了)
| 过度劳累. He was breaking up under the strain.
| 制止

6) break off | 折断 The stick was broke / broke off.
| 突然停止讲话
| 与... 绝交 ~ with sb.
| 与... 断绝关系 ~ relations with ...
| 暂行歇业

7) break into 闯入, 破门而入

8) break out 爆发 (战争等)

9) break through 突破

10) broken English 蹩脚英语

④ bring.

1) bring about | 引起, 造成 ~ a quarrel

| 实现 ~ a peaceful solution to the problem



2) bring down | 使倒下
| 降低价格.

3) bring in 赚钱, 引进

4) bring on { 引起 Dirt often brings on disease.
使生长更快, 使提高

5) bring out 讲解清楚 ~ the meaning of the phrase.

6) bring up { 抚养
呕吐

7) bring ... into touch with (和各种名词连用)使进入某种状态, 这里指保持联系

8) bring forward { 提出(建议, 问题等)
提前, 提早

⑤ call

1) call for { 要求
来找某人
来取某物

2) call in on sb / call in at sp. (same place) 顺便拜访
call in { 来找, 来请 ~ a doctor
召集

3) call names 骂人

4) call off 取消

5) call on { 请/叫(某人做某事), 也可用 call upon.
号召
(正式)要求(某人做某事)

6) call attention to 引起对...的注意

7) call sb. up 给...打电话

call up 使回忆起来



8) give sb. a call; make a call / a long-distance call 打(长途)电话

⑥ carry

1) carry on 进行; 进行下去 2) carry out 进行; 履行 3) carry through. 顺利完成

⑦ come

1) come to 表示过程/变化的过程 He came to realize that he was mistaken.

2) (用于句中) 发生某种情况. How come that you didn't get there in time?

3) come true 变成现实 4) come across (come upon / run across) 偶遇; 无意中想到

5) come about 发生, 遂成 6) come around 到这里来

7) come along! 快点, 快请 8) come to 总计; 谈到, 涉及

come on! 快点 come to light 被发现

9) come out 出版; 开花, 发芽; 考试结果... 考第一名 ~ first / second...

10) come to oneself 苏醒 come to a conclusion (decision) 得出结论

come to an end 结束 come into being (existence) 开始存在, 产生, 建立

come into effect (force) 生效 come into power 开始执政

eg. He came across an idea. 他(无意中)想到一个想法.

He came up with an idea. 提出

The question hasn't come up yet. 被提出.

⑧ care (介意)

1) care to 愿意

2) care for 喜欢; 想要; 照顾 Would you ^{like} care for a cup of coffee?

3) care about 喜欢; 关心

⑨ catch



1) catch fire 着火 2) catch one's eye / attention 引起注意 3) catch one's breath ^{喘气}

4) catch on 流行 5) catch in / be caught in 被围住 被钩住

7) [↑] catch sb. doing sth. 撞见, 偶然发现

⑩ clear

1) make sth. clear. 清楚, 明白 2) clear away 收走; 消除 (疑虑等)

3) clear (up) 晴朗; 整理, 收拾 (up)

⑪ Compare

1) compare to 和...相比; 把...比作 (compare A to B)

2) compare with 和...相比; 把...和...比 (compare A with B)

Compared to/with many women, she was indeed very lucky.

⑫ cover

1) 走完 (一段路程); 看完 (每页书); 有 (多大面积); 谈到, 涉及; 报道, 采访.

2) be covered with 覆盖

⑬ cut

1) cut off 切断, 切下来 cut in 插嘴 cut down 砍伐; 减少

cut out 戒掉, 不吃 cut up 切碎 cut through 锯断, 劈断, 凿穿

2) a short cut 捷径

⑭ deal

1) deal with 和...打交道; 处理; 讨论, 谈判, 和...做买卖 2) That's a deal! 成交 (口语中常出现)

⑮ die

1) die of 死于... (疾病, 年老, 饥寒, 情感等) illness / a fever / hunger / sadness

die from 死于... (除疾病, 情感以外的外部原因) an accident / the pollution air / a bad habit



对其现在两者同时已不大, 一般不会考这两个词组的区别, 很可能都排除。

die away/down (因) 声光, 清醒; 平息 die out 灭绝 dying for 渴望

⑩ do

- 1) I'm doing well/fine. (工作、学习、生活、成长等) 情况好
- 2) Will it do if we let you have an answer by Friday? 行, 够, 凑合
- 3) do up 包扎, 系捆; 整理, 收拾; 梳妆打扮.
- 4) do away with 废除
- 5) do one's hair 做头发 do the bed 铺床 do the room 打扫房间
- do wrong to sb. 使某人受委屈 do business 做生意 do wrong/right 做错/好事; 做得好
- 6) have something/nothing/anything a lot to do with
与... 有些/没有/有什么/有很大关系


⑪ end

- 1) end up with 以... 告终/结束
end up 最后(有某种结局), 最后(成子); 结束 ~ in hospital
- 2) end in 以... 告终, 结果...
- 3) put an end to 结束, 制止 come to and end 结束

⑫ fall

- 1) fall behind 落后 fall in love with sb. 爱上某人
fall down 失败, 不起作用 fall into = be divided into 被分成
fall in with 赞同

⑬ fix

- 1) fix one's eye on/upon 注视
fix one's attention on 注意
-  fix (on) a time for sth. 预定时间于某事
fix 做(饭), 沏(茶), 修理, 整理.

⑳ follow

遵循, 听从; 跟随; 沿着...走; 听懂, 理解; 接着发生 (May follows April).

Can you follow me?

㉑ get

1) get through 给...接通电话; 用完; 通过; 做完

2) get round 消息传开 get down 跪下, 萎靡; get down to doing 着手做

get along 进展, 进行 get off (from) work 下班

get away 离开, 离开 get over 克服, 摆脱

㉒ give

1) give away 送给, 分发; 泄露

give way 妥协, 服从

give into to 投降

give back 恢复

give off 散发 (光, 热, 香气)

give one's regards/greetings/thanks to...

give out 发出 (声音); 分发; 宣布; 被用完 (主动语态 = be used up); 体力不支

㉓ go

1) go ahead 开始做 (某事); 进展; 承"同意". (Yes, go ahead.)

2) go against 违背

go over 仔细检查

go by 经过

go / do without 不吃, 不用

go down 价格, 温度, 下跌

date / go back to 追溯, 回顾

go into 调查, 研究

have a go at doing sth. 试一试

go in for 爱好

㉔ hand



1) at hand 在手边; 就要来了

give sb. a hand 帮忙

by hand 手工的

hand down 传下来, 传给

hand on 移交

hand over 移交

hand out 散发

On (the) one hand, on the other hand

hand in 上交

一方面, 另一方面

④ hold

1) hold back 犹豫不决; 隐瞒; 阻碍

2) hold on to 坚持; 不送或不碰(某物) hold on 别挂(电话)

3) hold out 坚持(抵抗), 顶住(压力) hold one's position 担任某个职位

hold up 举起; 使搁置

hold office 任职

4) hold: keep sb./sth. in a particular manner or position 使某人某物处于某种状态

⑤ keep

1) keep back 隐瞒; 扣留

keep off 远离; (雨雪)暂时停止

keep away from 避开

keep on 继续

keep up 继续; 保持; 与...齐步向前 (with)

⑥ look

1) look into 调查

look up 查寻; 拜访

look on 旁观

look through 浏览

look out for 小心; 留心找某物

look back upon 回顾

⑧ make

1) make good/full use of 充分利用

make sense of / no sense 理解/不理解

make ends meet 使收支相抵

make the most of 充分利用



make it 成功

make up 打扮; 编, 创造

make out 弄清楚; 理解

make up for 弥补

be made up of 由...组成 (= consist of)

2) make 估计; 赚取; 成为 (~ a lawyer); 定在(某时间) (~ it 8:30)

②⑨ mean

1) 意味着; 有价值; 有...意图

2) mean for 有意让...干某工作; 打算(给, 做...)

③⑩ meet (汇合; 满足; 遇到)

meet with 遇到

③⑪ operate (机器开动; 起作用; 管理); 给...动手术 operate on)

③⑫ pay

1) pay a visit to: visit pay off 成功; 还清 pay back 偿还

pay to 收益 pay for 为...而付款

③⑬ pick

1) pick up 拾起; 沾染(坏习惯); 学习; 接人; 整理; 继续讲; 接收; 好转; 精神振奋.

2) pick out 挑选; 认出

③⑭ put

1) put aside 存储, 留下; 放在一边; 搁在一边, 不予考虑 put up with 容忍

put away 收起来

put sb. through 拨通电话

put back 放回原处; 推迟; (用钟) 拨慢

put on weight 增加体重



put forward (用钟) 拨快; 提出

put out 熄灭; 扑灭; 生产, 出版

⑤ refer

1) refer to 查阅; 提到; 说到; 谈到; 涉及; 指的是; 归功于

⑥ run (车辆行驶, 颜色, 运转(机器等), 水流, (道路等)延伸, 管理经营, 主持)

1) run for 竞选

run after 追赶

run away 走掉

run through 匆匆看一遍

sth. run out 用完 \Rightarrow 无余, 这里是主动语态

sb. run out of sth 用完

run over (车辆) 撞倒并碾过

⑦ see to

1) 处理, 负责, 照顾

2) see to it that = make sure / ensure that 确保

⑧ send

1) send sb. to sleep 使进入梦乡

send sb. mad 使... 抓狂 [send 与复合结构连用, 意为, 使变得]

2) send up 发射

send for 叫出租车, 叫救护车, 请医生来

⑨ set

1) set about doing / set out to do sth. 开始做或处理 着手

set aside (为了某种目的) 留出, 拨出, 存; 对... 不予考虑

set out (off) for 动身, 出发

set off 引爆



set up 立起来, 支起来, 创造

be set in 以... 为背景.

④⑩ show

1) show sb around 领某人到处看看 show off 炫耀

④⑪ stand (站立; 忍受)

1) stand for 代表 stand by 袖手旁观; 支持 两个对立的含义, 要看具体语境!

stand out 显眼, 引人注目 stand on one's own feet 依靠自己能力。

④⑫ strike (侵袭; 打; 种; 擦燃火柴); * An idea strikes me 某种想法忽然出现; (钟) 敲响

1) be struck by 对...有深刻印象

2) be on strike 罢工

④⑬ turn

1) turn down 拒绝

turn over 移交; 翻转; 撞翻

turn in 上床睡觉; 上交

turn up 出现

turn out (to be) 结果是

turn to 查(书); 求助于

turn sb on 使某人感兴趣

turn away 转身不看; 撵走

2) turn a blind eye to/on 视而不见

turn against 反对, 背叛

turn a deaf ear to 充耳不闻

turn about 向后转

take turns 轮流

* in turn 反过来; 一个挨一个

by turn 轮流

④⑭ take

1) take sth/sb. by surprise 突然袭击 take ... seriously 认真对待

2) * take up 占用(时间、空间); 从事某项爱好、活动; 继续讲述; 拿起武器 (~ arms).



3) take action 采取行动

take back 收回

take advantage of 利用

take over 接管

take on 呈现, 雇佣

take it easy 别急, 慢慢来

take pride in = be proud of

take the trouble to 费力, 不怕麻烦

⑫ work out

制定; 估计出, 算出; 理解; 判断, 推论; 得到圆满解释, 情况良好; (情况等) 发展, 进行。

2. 常用动词辨析

① announce / declare

1) announce: 正式地“宣布, 发表, 宣布”, 侧重“预告”人们关心或感兴趣的事, 尤指新闻。

eg. The government ~ that all the war prisoners would be set free.

John ~ to us his ^{订婚} engagement to Mary.

2) declare: 正式向公众“宣布, 宣告, 声明”, 侧重“当众”发表, 常用于宣战、议和、宣判。

eg. The two countries declared war.

★ ~~do not~~ declare 后可接复合宾语, announce 不可。He declared her a traitor to the war.

② defend / guard / protect / preserve

[相关词汇] 辨析 defend / guard / protect / preserve

◆ defend 指“保卫, 防御”, 常用物做宾语, 对象可以是具体的, 也可以是抽象的, 常用于 defend sb / oneself / sth against / from sb / sth 结构。

◆ guard 指“注意观察, 监视, 警卫, 戒备, 以免可能发生攻击或伤害”。常用结构为 guard against sth. vt.

◆ protect 指“保护……以免遭受危险或损害等”。常用于 protect sb. from / against sth 结构。

◆ preserve 指“保存, 贮存……以免分解或腐坏”。

[联想补充]

1. 津贴 allowance, fee, fare 和 pay

◆ allowance 指定期所给的津贴或零用钱。

◆ fee 指人们得到某种职业性服务后付出的费用, 如付给医生、律师、医生的酬金。

◆ fare 指一段旅程所需的车费或船费。

◆ pay 指工钱, 也是工作报酬的总称。

2. 常用的结构。

make allowance(s) for sth 考虑到,

估计到 (如在则复义数或计划时) 如:

The budget made allowance for inflation.

make allowances (for sb.) 体谅, 谅解。

③ divide / separate



1) divide: 把整体分成若干部分, be divided with into

2) separate: 把原来连在一起或靠在一起的东西分开 separate A from B

④ cure / treat

- 1) cure: 治愈 cure sb. of ... * cure 作名词时, 对... 的治疗, 用 a cure for ...
 2) treat: 强调治愈过程, 不一定是好 treat sb. for ...

⑤ advise / persuade / suggest

- 1) advise 建议, 未必成功, 其后接: ①名词代词 ②动名词 ③不定式复合结构 ④that 从句 从句常用虚拟语气

We advised an early start.

I advised his starting at once.

He often advised people to use their brains.

I advised that he (should) buy the pen.

- 2) persuade 劝服, 强调劝说成功 persuade sb. | to do sth.
 | into doing sth.

- 3) suggest vt. 提议, 建议, 其后接: ①名词 ②动名词 ③疑问词+不定式短语
 ④从句 (虚拟语气)

Did he suggest anything to the boss?

I suggest going home.

They have suggested that I should study medicine.

He didn't suggest what to do.

* 不存在 He suggested her to take the money. X

正确的是 He suggested that she should take the money.

⑥ beat / defeat / win / gain

- 1) beat 和 defeat 宾语是人或一个集体, 如 a team / class / army.

beat 是游戏、比赛专用词 defeat 专指战役上打败敌人



eg. We beat their team by 10 points.

* 它们经常替换.

2) gain & win

gain: 获取需要之物, 接 one's living / experience / strength / time / knowledge / attention 等
respect respect / admiration

win: 在较量竞争中取胜, 接 game / war / prize / fame / battle

win 还可作不及物动词 vi. 而 gain 表赢得是及物动词 vt.

① attend, enter for, join, take part in, join in, go in for, sit for.

它们都可表示“参加”的意思, 但用法不同。
1. attend 是正式用语, 用作及物动词或不及物动词。指参加会议、仪式、婚礼、葬礼、典礼等, 强调由是发出这一动作的主体, 即不参加则不参加, 不参加则不参加。

如: He'll attend an important meeting tomorrow.
他明天要参加一个重要会议。
He often attends a night school. 他经常上夜校。
If they invite us, we'll be definite to attend.
如果他们邀请我们, 我们会肯定地参加。

2. enter for 意为“报名参加某项比赛或考试等”。
如: He decide not to enter for the race.
他决定不参加比赛。

3. join 意为“become a member of...”, 因此其宾语往往是某组织或团体, 表示参军、入学、入党等。
如: My wish is to join the army after graduation.
我盼望的是毕业后参军。

4. take part in 指与参加会议或参加某种活动, 强调有明确的主体参加该活动并在活动中起作用。
如: We'll take part in social activities during summer vacation.
我们将在暑假期间参加社会活动。

5. join in 指参加某种活动, 强调参加者有平等机会。
如: He join in for swimming. 他参加游泳。
in sit for 表示“参加考试”的意思, 如: She sit for a scholarship but failed to win it.
她参加考试但未成功。

6. go in for 指“参加某种活动或爱好”, 强调由是发出这一动作的主体, 即不参加则不参加, 不参加则不参加。
如: Almost all the boys in our school joined in the basketball tournaments.
我们学校几乎所有的男孩都参加了篮球锦标赛。

7. sit for 意为“参加考试”, 强调由是发出这一动作的主体, 即不参加则不参加, 不参加则不参加。
如: Our headmaster will join us in the discussion this afternoon.
我们今天下午要和老师们讨论。

8. join in 意为“参加某种活动”, 强调参加者有平等机会。
如: Come and join us, Xiaowang. 加入我们吧。
9. take part in 意为“参加某种活动”, 强调有明确的主体参加该活动并在活动中起作用。
如: Jack's gone in for the long jump, but I don't think he has a chance to win.
杰克参加了长跑比赛, 但我认为他没有获胜机会。

10. go in for 意为“参加某种活动或爱好”, 强调由是发出这一动作的主体, 即不参加则不参加, 不参加则不参加。
如: He go in for swimming. 他参加游泳。
11. sit for 表示“参加考试”的意思, 如: She sit for a scholarship but failed to win it.
她参加考试但未成功。

② fit / suit / match

1) fit 与 suit 都表示“适合”, “合适”, fit 指尺寸、大小、形状而 suit 指款式、风格。
suit 还可指某种安排或情况是否方便。

Tomorrow suits me well. 明天对我很合适。



2) match: 与...相匹配

match ... to ... 使...与...相匹配

match up to ... 比得上

match with ... 与...相匹配

match ... with ... 使...与...相匹配; 使...与...较量; 使...与...结婚

⑨ dress / wear / put on / have on

1) dress, put on 表动作, dress + sb. (t + in + 衣服) / put on + 衣服

2) have on, wear, be dressed in 表状态

have on \rightarrow wear, 但作“穿着”之意时, have on 无视不分形词式(ing), 也无被动态.

wear 可以表佩戴(花, 纪念章), 留头发, 胡须, 有时 have on 也这样用

eg. She wears her hair long. 她留着长发.

They all had dark glasses on. 他们都戴着墨镜.

She was dressed in red. 她穿红色衣服.

⑩ lift / raise / rise

lift 是及物动词, 表示强调用外力把某物从地面提到一定的高度.

例如: He lifted the big book off the floor and put it on the table.

他把那本大书从地板上拿起放在桌子上.

That package might be too heavy to lift. 那个包裹可能太重, 搬不动.

应注意, lift 作及物动词, 可以引申为“解散”.

raise 也是及物动词, 是“抬高”、“提高”的意思, 强调动作的状态, 反义词是 lower (降低).

例如: raise one's hand 举手

raise a flag 升旗

raise a stone 搬石头

raise one's voice 提高嗓门说话

raise the rate of production 提高生产率

rise 是及物动词, 表示“升起”、“站起来”的意思, 表示自然而高的变化过程.

例如: The sun rises in the east. 太阳从东方升起.

When does he rise every day? 他每天几点起床?

Prices are rising. 物价在上涨.



⑩ demand / require

1) 两者都可表示“要求”，有时可换用，如：

They demand / require my appearance. 他们要求我到场。

两者的区别在于：demand 通常指坚持其合法或公道的东西，暗示期望着有反应做相应的义务；require 则常指法律、法规、制度、惯例、环境等提出要求，其强制性较强。

比较：The policeman demanded his name and address.

警察问他说出他的名字和地址。

We require warm clothing for the winter.

我们冬季需要穿暖和的衣服。

用于事物时，两者都表示“需要”，有时可换用，其区别主要是 require 的客观性较强。如：

The letter demands / requires an immediate answer.

这封信要求立即答复。

The court requires the attendance of witness.

法庭要求证人出庭。

2) 表示“要求”时，两者在结构上的差异。

①两者后都可接 that 从句，但以汉语通常用“should+动词原形”这样的虚拟语气形式。如：

He demands / requires that we (should) leave at once.

他要求我们马上离开。

还有一个表示“请求”的词 request，语气较委婉。

按语气由强至弱：require > demand > request

② demand 后可接不定式(但不接动名词)，但 require 则不能。如：

She demanded to see the manager. 她要求见经理。

He demanded to be told everything.

他要求把一切都告诉他。

注意：require 表示“需要”时，其后可接动名词(用主动形式表被动)或不定式(用被动形式表被动)。如：

The machine requires repairing / to be repaired.

这机器需要修理。类似物有 need!

③ demand 不接不定式的复合结构，但 require 后可接不定式的复合结构。如：

They required him to keep it a secret.

他们要求他对这件事保密。

All the members are required to attend the meeting.

全体成员均被要求出席会议。

注意：demand 后不接不定式的复合结构，但 demand of 后可接不定式的复合结构。如：

They demanded of her to go with them.

他们要求她同他们一起去。

④表示“向某人要求某物”，可用 demand sth. of / from sb. 如：

He demanded too high a price of me.

他向我要价太高。

He demanded an apology from the boss.

他要求老板道歉。

require 有时也可接用，但更常见其被动语态后接 of sb. 如：

What do you require of me? 你要我做什么?

⑪ speak / talk / say / tell

1) speak, talk 是及物动词，但 speak 后加上语言名称作宾语时及物，如 speak Chinese

speak 强调单方的“说”、“讲” talk 强调双方的“交谈”

speak to / with sb. about sth.

talk to / with sb. about sth.

2) say, tell 是及物动词，tell 表“告诉”，可接双宾语，say 强调说话内容，主语未必是人。

say sth. to sb. eg. A note notice saying "Keep Out".



tell sb. sth. = (tell sth. to sb.); tell sb. to do sth.

3) 表示“演讲、演讲、发言”一般用 speak; tell 的搭配：tell a lie / story

三. 例题讲解

1. Clinical evidence began to _____, suggesting that the new drugs had a wider range of useful activities than had been predicted from experiments in animals. (2011-湖北)

A. operate B. strengthen C. approve D. accumulate
 选D. 句意: 临床证据开始积累, 表明这种新药物的用途比以往在动物身上做实验所预测的用途更广泛。这是词汇辨析题。A. 操作 B. 加强 C. 赞成 D. 积累

2. Emergency line operators must always _____ calm and make sure that they get all information they need to send help. (湖北高考)

A. grow B. appear C. become D. stay
 选D. 句意: 紧急情况下接线员必须总是保持镇静并确保他们得到所需的信息, 以便提供帮助。考查系动词。A. 逐渐变得 B. 出现 C. 成为 D. 保持 = remain

3. I can _____ the house being untidy, but I hate it if it's not clean.

A. come up with B. put up with C. turn to D. stick to (2011-新课标全国)
 选B. 句意: 我能忍受房子凌乱, 但不喜欢它不干净。
 A. 找到(答案); 想出(主意) B. 容忍 C. 转向, 求助于 D. 坚持

4. The two sportsmen congratulated each other _____ winning the match.

A. with B. on C. in D. to (上海高考)
 选B. congratulate sb. on (doing) sth. 祝贺 考查动词与介词的搭配。



专题六. 时态和语态

一. 提纲挈领

考点: 1. 时态 (一般现在时, 一般过去时, 一般将来时, 现在进行时, 过去进行时, 过去将来时, 将来进行时, 现在完成时, 过去完成时, 现在完成进行时)

2. 被动语态

重点: 掌握10种动词时态的基本用法; 掌握被动语态的用法; 掌握不用被动的不及物动词.

高考考点: 1般体1题, 进行体2题, 完成体4题, 完成进行体2题, 被动语态2题.

二. 知识归纳

1. 英语中动词共有十种, 要求掌握的有8种: 一般现在时, 一般过去时, 一般将来时, 现在进行时, 过去进行时, 现在完成时, 一般过去完成时, 一般过去将来时, 还在现在完成进行时, 过去完成进行时, 将来完成时也很常用.

时态	}	- 一般现在时 (do/does)
		- 一般过去时 (did)
	}	with/shall do, be to do
		- 一般将来时 be going to do, be about to do
		现在进行时 (am/is/are doing)
		过去进行时 (was/were doing)
		现在完成时 (have/has done)
		过去完成时 (had done)
		将来完成时 (will have done)
		现在完成进行时 (has/have been doing)
		过去完成进行时 (had been doing)
	}	过去将来时 would/should do, was/were to do
		was/were going to do, was/were about to do

2. 时态用法

一般现在时: 现在的经常性、习惯性动作或状态, 常与 often, always, seldom, twice, a day 等连用
表示客观真理、科学事实: The sun rises in the east.
if, unless, even if 引导的条件状语从句中表将来.
when, before, until (till), as soon as, the moment, once 引导的时间状语从句表将来
no matter what/who/which/when/where/how, whatever, whoever... 让步状语从句表将来

eg. I'll go with you if I finish my work.
when

一般过去时: 常与 yesterday, last night, three days ago 等连用.
* 我原以为... I thought ... 也用过去时

一般将来时: 现在看来以后要发生的事
事物的固有属性或必然趋势 Fish will die without water.
be going to 表示计划打算做某事, 还可表根据现在迹象对将来的推断.
eg. Look at the dark clouds. It is going to rain.
be about to: 表示立即的将来, 不与具体时间状语连用.
eg. The train is about to start.
come, go, arrive, leave, begin, start 其一般现在时、现在进行时“表示按计划将来要发生的事,

eg. He comes here tonight.

I arrive in Beijing at 3:00 p.m. tomorrow.

be to do 表示计划要做的事. She is to be married next week.

表示应该, 义务 should, ought to You are to report to the police.

表示想, 打算 intend, want

用于第一人称疑问句征求意见, What are we to do next?

用于否定句表禁止, 必须 mustn't The books are not to be taken out.



一般将来时 | be to do 表“可以、可能”，相当于 may, can.
 were to do sth. 用于 if 或 even if / though 从句中，表示对未来的假设。
 be to blame (该受责备), be to let (待出租)

① 进行体 (统一用法)

① 一个长动作作为背景，被一个短动作打断，长动作往往用进行体，短动作用一般体。

eg. My brother fell while he was riding his bicycle and hurt himself.

② 表示动作的未完成性、暂时性

eg. — Have you moved into the new house?

— Not yet. The rooms are being painted. (稳定性)

I don't really work there; I am just helping out until the new secretary arrives. (暂时性)

③ 表计划、安排要做的事

④ 表现在或当时发展中的或正在进行的情况。

eg. I finish first met Lily 3 years ago. She was working at a clothes shop at that time.

⑤ 表示反复出现的或习惯性的动作，往往含有恼怒、厌恶、遗憾等情绪，常与 always, continually, constantly 连用。

eg. He is always thinking of others first. 他总是先想到他人。



⑥ 瞬间动词的进行体可表将来。(见一般将来时的用法)

现在完成时: 一个动作开始于过去, 持续到现在(也许是会持续到将来)。常见的词有: lately, recently,

in the last/past/few days/years (在对过去的事件里), since then, up to now, so far.

发生在过去的事情对现在产生的影响, 常用状语: already, just, yet, never, before

* This/It is the first/second... time + that 从句 that 从句谓语用现在完成时在条件, 时间, 让步状语从句中表示将来某时间以前已完成的动作。

eg. I will go with you as soon as I have finished my work.

瞬间动词持续一段时间的状态, 要变成延续性动词, 句式不用变。

eg. He has come to Shanghai since last year. X

He has lived in Shanghai since last year. V

He has joined the army for 3 years. X

He has been a soldier for 3 years. V

* 常见的瞬间动词

come, go, get to/reach/arrive at/in, leave, buy, sell, open, close, join,

begin/start, get up, return, borrow/lend, give, bring/take, die, finish/end,

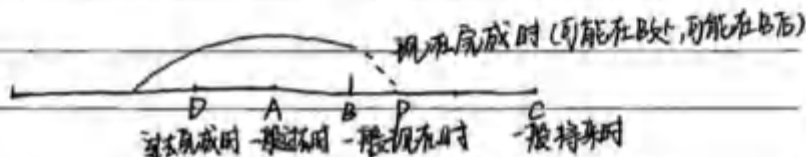
receive/hear from, marry, break, lose, jump 等。

* 过去完成时:

① 过去的过去

可用 before 引导。

eg. He said he had been abroad for 3 years.



② 从过去某时间开始, 有延续到过去另一时间, 常用时间状语: by then, by that time,

until then, by the end of, before 2000, by the time + 过去时的句子

eg. By then he had learned English for 3 years.



③ Hardly / Scarcely / Rarely had sb. done when + 过去时 意为: ... 和
No sooner had sb. done than + 过去时

eg. Hardly had we started when the car got a flat tyre. (轮胎爆了)

④ It was/had been + 一段时间 + since sb had done sth.

eg. It was 10 years since we had had such a wonderful time. 我们/从没这么高兴了。

⑤ That/This/It was the first/second... time that sb had done sth.

eg. That was the third time that I had passed the exam.

⑥ 表示愿望、打算一类词,如 hope, expect, mean, intend, want, think, suppose 等,其过去完成时表示过去未曾实现的愿望或意图。

eg. I had hoped to see more of Shanghai. (未能如愿)

将来完成时: 到将来某一时间某动作将会完成,常用的时间状语为"by + 将来的某个时间"

By this time of next year, all of you will have become college students.

完成进行体: 由于高考只涉及现在完成进行时并且近年来高考中考查次数也很少,此处只讲现在完成进行时的用法。

现在完成进行时: 一个动作开始于过去,持续到现在,并强调现在还在进行。

eg. He has been learning English for 6 years. (强调到现在还在学)

It has been raining for 3 days. (强调说话者"抱怨"的感情色彩)

3. 一般过去时和现在完成时的用法区别。

* 一般过去时所表示的一个或一段过去时间是可以具体确定的,纯属过去。

现在完成时说的是现在的情况。



He served in the army from 1952 to 1954. 过去

He has served in the army for 5 years. 现在仍是军人。

He wrote many plays when he was at college. 过去

He has written many plays. 他是剧作家。

I saw Hero last year. 去年看的

I have seen Hero before. 以前某个时间看的, 无具体表时间的状语, 用现在完成时。

4. 一般过去时和过去完成时的用法区别

① 一般过去时是指过去的动作或情况, 而过去完成时指过去的一个动作或时间前发生的。

He had learned 3,000 English words before he came to this school.

5. 被动语态

时	现在	过去	将来
一般	is/am/are done	was/were done	will/shall be done
进行	is/am/are being done	was/were being done	will/shall be being done
完成	have/has been done	had been done	will/shall have been done
完成进行	have/has been being done	had been being done	will/shall have been being done

过去将来: should/would be done (一般); would/shall be being done (进行);

would/shall have been done (完成); would/shall have been being done (完成进行)

① 不明动作执行者, 或没必要指明时, 用被动。

eg. The window hasn't been cleaned for weeks.

② 强调动作承受者或事件, 用被动



③ 在文章标题、广告、新闻中, 用被动。

Girls wanted. 招女工。

④ 动作执行者不是人时, 用被动

eg. The number of deaths will be reduced.

⑤ get + 过去分词表被动.

eg. She got married last week.

The patient got treated once a week.

6. 主动形式表被动意义.

① 系动词 look, sound, feel, smell, taste, appear, seem, go, prove, turn, stay, become, fall, get, grow, keep + 形容词/名词 构成系表结构.

eg. The steel feels cold.

② 表示开始、结束、运动的动词, 如 begin, finish, start, open, close, stop, end, shut, run, move.

eg. The shop closes at 6 p.m. every day.

③ 表示主语的某种属性特征的动词, 如 read, write, act, iron, cut, draw, drive, sell, wash, clean, wear, open, cook, lock, shut, dry, eat, drink 这类动词一般不单独使用, 常有一个修饰语.

eg. This coat dries easily. 这种外衣易于干.

④ 少数动词用于进行时, 其主动形式表示被动含义, 如 print, cook, fly, hang, build, make.

eg. The meat is cooking. 肉正在煮.



⑤ 介词 in, on, under 等 + 名词 构成介词短语表被动.

under control / repair / discussion / construction / treatment

beyond belief 难以置信
lonely reach 孤独长莫及
lonely control

for sale 待售

in print 在印刷中

on sale 出售

on trial 受审

⑥不能用于被动语态的词有:

fit, have, wish, cost, agree with, arrive at/in, shake hands with,

succeed in, belong to, happen to, suffer from, take part in.

例题讲解.

1. — Hey, look where you are going!

— Oh, I'm terribly sorry —.

A. I'm not noticing B. I wasn't noticing C. I haven't noticed D. I don't notice

选B. 该题前一句是祈使句表示提醒, 看你走到哪去了! 后一句答“哦, 对不起, 我刚才没留神所走过的路。”说明没留神是刚才才过的事, 故选B. 此类题常考, 背出来即可.

2. — Is this hat yours?

— No, mine _____ there near the window.

A. is hanging B. has hung C. hangs D. hung

选A. 回答No. 说明帽子不是自己的, 自己的现在正挂在窗边, 暗合“now”, 故选A. 表状态. hang这个词也常考.

3. Tom _____ a book about China last year, but I don't know whether he has finished it.

A. has written B. wrote C. had written D. was writing



选D. 句意 Tom 去年在写一本关于中国的书, 但我不知道他现在是否完成了. 表

过去开始, 但暗合尚未完成. 若选B则表示已经完成, C表示明确“过去时过去”时间状语.

4. The price _____, but I ~~don't~~ doubt whether it will remain so.

A. went down B. will go down C. has gone down D. was going down

选C. 句意: 价格已下跌了, 但我怀疑价格是否能保持现状. 这种“降价”对现在造成了一定的影响, 合乎现在完成时特点. 选C.

记住, 过去时的出现必须有时明确过去的时间状语. 若无, 仅从句意推断得出表过去, 一般用现在完成时, 当然, 也可能是其它的时态.

5. Mr White works as a lawyer now, but he _____ in a company for several years.

A. worked B. has worked C. had worked D. had been worked

选A. 这是值得重点注意的一道题. 由于“for several years”, 很多人会选B, 但题中表达的是今非昔比, 过去的行为对现在造成影响, 仅仅是一个动作的结果, 故选A.

6. Unfortunately when I arrived she _____, so we only had time for a few words.

A. just left B. has just left C. was just leaving D. had just left

选C. 由后半句可知, 我们只说了几句话, 说明我到的时候她还没走, 排除A, B, D, 即是正要离开.

7. — Alice, why didn't you come yesterday?

— I _____, but I had an unexpected visitor.

A. had B. would C. was going to D. did

选C. 该题易受 yesterday 影响选A或D, 但自回答者 but I had an unexpected visitor 可知, 他其实没去, 但他原计划去, 选C. 表原打算做事.

8. The discovery of gold in Australia led thousands to believe that a fortune _____.

A. is made B. would make C. was to be made D. had made



选C. 由 led 可知事情发生在过去, 排除A. 人们相信要发财了, 表示将来, 排除D. B

专题七 非谓语动词

一. 考纲解读

考点: 1. 动词不定式 → 现在分词 → 过去分词
 2. 动词-ing形式 3. 动词-ed形式

重点: 非谓语动词作状语, 现在分词, 不定式和分词作定语, 补语.

高考考点: 宾语题, 补语题, 状语题, 定语题, 表语, 主语及
 其他题

二. 知识归纳

1. 分词, 不定式作宾补

① 感官动词 see, watch, observe, look at, hear, listen to, notice 等和使役动词 have 后面的宾补有两种情况.

1) see/hear ... / have sb. { do sth. 表主动, 全过程, 动作已完成
 doing sth. 表主动, 正在做某事.

2) see/hear ... / have sth. { done 表被动, 动作已完成或没有一定时间性
 being done 表被动, 正在做某事.

eg. • I heard her sing an English song just now. (主动, 全过程, 动作已完成)

• I heard her singing an English song when I passed by her room yesterday. (主动, 正在进行)

• I heard an English song being sung by a little girl when I passed by her room yesterday. (被动, 正在进行)

• I'd like to see the plan carried out. (被动, 无时间性)

② { let sb. do sth. 让...做...

let sth. be done 让...被做...



③ leave 后接非谓语动词作宾补, 表为“使...处于某种状态”.

sb. doing sth. 让某人去做某事, 主动关系, 正在进行
 sth. undone 留下某事未做, 被动关系, 动作已完成
 Leave (单独中考的语法) { 一般还有 unfinished, unsettled, untouched
 sb. to do sth. 留下某人做某事 } 表将来的动作
 sth. to be done 留下某事要做

eg. We hurriedly ended our meeting, leaving many problems to be settled.

我们匆忙结束了会议, 留下了很多问题等待解决。(被动, 将来)

He left, leaving me to do all the rest work.

他走了, 留下我一个人去做剩余的所有工作。(主动, 将来)

④ have, get 可接不定式, 现在分词, 过去分词三种。

1) have sth. done = get sth. done 让某人做某事。

eg. I'll have/get my bike repaired tomorrow. 我明天得找人修一下自行车。

* have sth. done 还有“使...遭受...”之意。

eg. Tom had his leg broken while playing football.

Mr Green had his house broken into while he was on holiday.

2. | have sb./sth. doing 让某人/物持续做...

| get sb./sth. doing 让某人/物开始做...

* not have sb. doing 不容忍某人做...

eg. I won't have you speaking to your dad like that.

我不允许你对你父亲那样说话。

3. | have sb. do sth. 让某人去做某事。

| get sb. to do sth.

eg. Mum had me go to the school shop and buy some salt.

⑤ 动词/动词词组 + sb. to do sth.

advise, allow, ask, beg, encourage, expect, forbid, force, get,
intend, invite, like, love, order, persuade, prefer, remind, require,
teach, tell, want, warn, wish, think, wait for, call on,
depend on.

* 有些词除了 + sb. to do 还有别的用法, 如 persuade sb. into doing sth.
remind sb. of sth.

⑥ 下列结构中用不定式作主补

sb. be said / believed / known / reported / considered / found / thought

+ to do

have done

be done

have been done

表示据称/据认为/据占解/据报道/据认为/据发现/据认为

⑦ 不定式 现在分词作主补

1) 下列动词在主动语态中作主补不带 to, 在被动语态中带 to

★ 五看三望两厅一感觉

五看: look at, see, watch, notice, observe

三使役: make, let, have

两厅: listen to, hear

一感觉 = feel.

eg. I hate to see you leave so soon.



Someone was heard to come up the stairs.

2) 以上动词还可用现在分词作定语

除了 let, make, 再加上 find, catch, keep, leave

eg. I'm sorry to have kept you waiting for such a long time.

He was caught stealing.

2. 不定式, 分词作定语

① 若定语是不及物动词, 或不定式修饰的名词代词是不定式动作的地点、工具, 不定式后面要有介词。

eg. The Greens have a comfortable house (to live in) 不定式作定语, 且该人 lives 的

[live in a house] 不动产 动作对象就是 house.

* 若不定式修饰的名词是 place, way, time, 介词省去. He had no money and no place to live.

② Have you got anything to send? 你有东西要寄吗?

Have you got anything to be sent? 你有什么东西要(我)求别人寄吗?

to send / to be sent 的动作执行者分别是你, 我或别人. 意思不同.

只要不定式的动作执行者是其修饰的名词或代词时, 都有这两种用法.

③ 不定式表将来: The car to be bought is for her sister. 要买的车是给她姐的.

→ 修饰序数词最高级 / no, all, any + 中心词, 且与中心词是主动关系, 用不定式.

eg. He was the best man to do the job

最高级 中心词

→ 被修饰的词是抽象名词时用不定式: ability, chance, idea, fact, excuse, promise
answer, reply, attempt, belief, way, reason, moment, time.

eg. I have no chance to go sightseeing.

④ 分词作定语



① 及物动词作定语, 分词形式有: V-ing (主动关系) being + 过去分词 (被

动关系 正在进行) 过去分词 (被动关系, 表完成)

eg. The house being built are for the teachers. (被动, 正在进行)

"Things lost never come again!" (被动, 完成)

I have never seen a more moving moving. (主动, 表特征)

> 不及物动词作定语, 其分词形式为: V-ing (正在进行)

过去分词 (已完成)

eg. { boiling water 沸腾的水

{ boiled water 烧开过的水

{ falling leaves 正在下落的叶子

{ fallen leaves 已经落下的叶子

⑤ to be done, 过去分词, 现在分词 being done 作定语的区别

{ to be done (被动, 将来)

{ 过去分词 (被动, 完成)

{ being done (被动, 正在进行)

eg. Have you read the book written by Dickens?

Listen! The song being sung is very popular.

The question to be discussed is an important one.

3. 不定式、动名词作定语的使用要点.

① 下列动词只能用不定式作定语.

决心、学会、想、希望, 拒绝、设法、假装.

主动答应、送、计划, 同意、请、邀请、帮助.

decide/determine, learn, want, expect/hope/wish; refuse, manage, care.

pretend; offer, promise, choose, plan; agree, ask/beg, help.

此外, afford, strive, happen, wait, threaten 也可用不定式作定语.



eg. She pretended not to see me when I passed away.

还有些动词补充: hesitate, fail

② 下列动词只用动名词作宾语。

口诀一：考虑建议盼原谅，承认推迟没得想。

避免错过继续练，否认完成前欣赏。

禁止想象才冒险，不禁介意准逃之。

consider, suggest / advise, look forward to, excuse / pardon;

admit, delay / put off, fancy; avoid, miss, keep / keep on, practice;

deny, finish, enjoy / appreciate; forbid, imagine, risk;

can't help, mind, allow / permit, escape.

口诀二：妹妹不吃咖啡的，memepaskcorfeid

mind, enjoy, miss, escape, practice, admit / avoid, suggest / stand, keep,

consider, appreciate, risk, finish / forgive, excuse, imagine, delay / dislike, deny

Tips: 大家可以任选一种口诀背诵 ✓

此外，还有一些动词词组：devote to, lead to, stick to, pay attention to,

object to, give up, be busy (in)

eg. He gave up learning English.

③ 下列动词与词组既可跟不定式，又可跟动名词，但意义不同。

1) forget { to do sth. 忘记不做某事 (没做)

doing sth. 忘记做过某事 (做了)

remember { to do sth. 记得不做某事 (没做)

doing sth. 记得做过某事 (做了)



regret { to do sth. 遗憾不做某事 (没做)

doing sth. 后悔做过某事 (做了)

stop { to do sth 停下来去做另一件事.
 doing sth. 停止做现在正在做的事.

try { to do sth. 努力做某事
 doing sth. 尝试做某事.

mean { to do sth. 打算意味着做某事
 doing sth. 意味着做某事.

go on { to do sth (做完某事)接着做另一件事
 doing sth (= go on with sth) 继续做同一件事

can't help { (to) do sth. 不能帮助做某事
 doing sth. 情不自禁地做某事.

2) allow/permit/forbid/advise { sb. to do sth. → 被动 sb be allowed ... to do sth
 doing sth.

3) need/want/require { to be done
 (需要) doing
 sb. to do sth.

be worth { 名词 eg. The book is worth £100.
 (值, 值得) doing eg. The book is worth reading.

be worthy { to be done eg. The book is worthy to be read.
 (配得上, 值得) 介 { 名词 (在钱数或表示价格的词除外) The place is worthy of a visit.
 being done. eg. The book is worthy of being read.

worthwhile: adj. 值得的, 值得花时间的, 可作定语, 表语, 表补.

eg. Working is a worthwhile career. (表语)



The visit to Paris is worthwhile. (表语)

I think it worthwhile to read the book. (表补).

此外, 还有 It is worthwhile doing / to do sth.

有时还可以在 worth 和 while 间加 on, worth on's while 值得某人...

④ 动词不定式在 but, other than 后面时, 若前面有 do 的某形式, 不定式不带 to 则带 to

eg. We could (do) nothing but / other than wait.

He had no choice but to wait.

另外, 在 cannot choose but, cannot help but (R. 23), cannot but (R. 23), had better, would rather 后不定式也无 to.

eg. He cannot choose but leave.

⑤ 不定式作动词 tell, show, understand, teach, learn, advise, discuss, wonder, ask, find out, decide 等的宾语时, 前面常常带 how, what, whether, where, when, who 等, 但 why 后不定式无 to.

eg. I don't know what to do.

Can you tell me why do it?

五. 不定式、分词作状语

① 不定式作状语可表目的, 原因, 条件, 结果.

eg. He ten had to shout (to make herself heard). (表目的) 为了

* 有时为强调目的, 可用 in order to / so as to (以便) + V 原形 so as to 不用句首

eg. The but stopped so as to pick up passages

He hurried to the station (only to find) that the train had left.

表出乎意料的结果.



To look at him, you would like him. (表条件)

I am very glad / sorry / excited / angry / sad... to do sth. (表原因)

② 分词作状语

1) 分词作状语必须与句中主语保持数、性一致。分词作状语可以有以下几种形式：

doing 与主语是主动关系，与谓语动词同时或基本同时发生。

having done ... 主动 ... 先于谓语动词发生。

done ... 被动 ...

being done ... 被动 ... 同时发生，一般作原因状语置于句首。

having been done ... 被动 ... 先于谓语动词发生。

分词作状语可承 时间、原因、结果、条件、让步、行为方式、伴随状况。

↓ (有时可用 when/while 引出)

eg. • When offered help, one often says "Thank you". (时间)

当被提供帮助时，人们常说“谢谢”。

• Be careful while/when crossing the street. (时间)

• Separated from other continents for millions of years, Australia has many plants and animals not found in any other country in the world. (原因)

• Generally speaking, when taken according to directions, the drug has little side effect. (条件)

• He died, leaving no money to his family. (结果)

• Having been told many times, he still repeated the same mistake. (让步)

The teacher came in, followed by many students. (伴随)

2) 独立成分作状语

generally speaking 一般来说

allowing for 考虑到...

frankly speaking 坦率地说

supposing / assuming 假使

judging from/by 根据...判断

provided (that...) 如果



considering... / taking... into consideration 考虑到

excluding 除了

to tell you the truth 说实话

admitting 虽说，即使

compared to / with 与...相比

given 考虑到, 鉴于

eg. Considering your health, you'd better have a rest.

*) 独立主格 重点, 难点!

非谓语动词作状语时, 它的逻辑主语与句主语必须一致, 但有时非谓语动词有自己的逻辑主语, 在句中作状语, 即独立主格结构。它最大的特点是逻辑主语的句主语不同

独立主格的构成: 名词/代词

现在分词/过去分词

形容词/副词

不定式

介词短语

with / without + 名词/代词 + 原补

eg. • The test finished, we began our holiday.

逻辑主语

句主语

(= when the test was finished.)

• The president was assassinated, the whole country was in deep sorrow.

(= After the president was assassinated.) (谋杀)

• Whether permitting, we are going to visit you tomorrow.

(= If weather permits.)

• He came out of the library, with a book in his hand.

book in hand.

6. 不定式的保留问题.

有时为了避免重复, 用代词代替前面的不定式, 这种情况常出现在下列动词后面:

expect, hope, wish, mean, prefer, care, forget, want, try, be glad / happy,



would like / love

* 但若省略的不定式结构中含有 be, have, have been, 则这些词要保留.

eg. I haven't been to Hong Kong, but I wish to. 省略 go to Hong Kong.

— Are you on holiday?

— No, but I'd like to be. 省略 on holiday.

— I didn't tell him the news.

— Oh, you ought to have. 省略 told him. 你本应该告诉他的.

7. 不定式的主动形式和被动形式. (以下取中解释可能较难理解, 只要看懂例句即可).

① 不定式修饰的名词或代词和不定式在逻辑上构成主谓关系时, 往往用主动形式.

eg. Do you have a knife to cut the watermelon?
主 谓

② 不定式和它前面被修饰的名词或代词构成逻辑上的动宾关系, 又和该句主语构成主谓关系时, 不定式常用主动.

eg. She has a sister to look after. 不可用成 to be looked after x

③ 不定式作表语形容物的状语, 和句中主语构成逻辑上的动宾关系时, 多用主动.

eg. The book is difficult to understand.

This kind of fish is nice to eat.

English is easy to learn. 不可用成 to be learned x

√④ 在 there be 结构中, 当说话人考虑的是必须有人去完成某件事时, 不定式用主动形式; 如果说话人强调的是事情本身必须被完成, 则用被动形式.

| There is a lot of work to do. (Someone has to do the work)

| There is a lot of work to be done. (The work has to be done.)



8. 有些动词的现在分词和过去分词形式, 即 Ving, Ved 意义区分常在

developed 发达的

exciting 令人兴奋的, 形容词 (主语是物) sth be exciting.
excited 兴奋的, 形容词 (主语是人) sb be excited.
(表情绪的词如 interesting, interested / puzzled, surprised 等, 用派类似.)

三 例题讲解

1. With Father's Day around the corner, I have taken some money out of the bank _____ presents for my dad. (全国I高卷)

A. buy B. to buy C. buying D. to have bought

选B. 不定式作目的状语, 表示“为了”. 词组 around the corner 即将来临.

2. The island, _____ to the mainland by a bridge, is easy to go to.

A. joining B. to join C. joined D. having joined (2011. 全国II)

选C. 岛屿是被连接到大陆上的, island be joined to the mainland, 因此选C. 过去分词表被动.

3. I have a lot of readings _____ before the end of this term. (山东高卷)

A. completing B. to complete C. to be completed D. completed

选B. have sth to do 有某事要做, 在前面T④中讲过, 用主动.

4. I had great difficulty _____ the suitable food on the menu in that restaurant. (上海高卷)

A. find B. found C. to find D. finding

选D. 做某事有困难, have

difficult

problems

trouble

5. In April, thousands of holidaymakers remained _____ abroad due to the volcanic ash cloud. (福建高卷)

A. sticking B. stuck C. to be stuck D. to have stuck



选B. 本题的难点是词义理解. stuck 在此处是过去分词, 表“被卡住, 被滞留”. 若不认识, 也可做题. A表正在进行X, C表将来X, D是现在完成用X. 选B.

6. — In many developed countries, the elderly have already outnumbered children.

— Yes, and Chinese is reported _____ through a similar process of population aging, and at a faster pace.

A. to go B. to be going C. going D. to have gone

选 B. sb/sth is said/ reported to ..., 故排除 C.

根据句意, 中国正在进入老龄化阶段, 所以用进行时, 选 B.

7. _____ back to China, all the staff who had worked in Libya strongly felt that our country is very powerful.

A. To fly B. Being flying C. To be flown D. Having been flown

选 D. 句意: 被空运回到中国以后, 所有利比亚工作过的人员都强烈地感受到了我们国家的强大.

A. C 是不定式, 表目的, 不合句意, 排除 B 项应采用 flying, 而不是被动的故选 D



专题八 情态动词和虚拟语气

一. 卷纲解读

考点: 情态动词、虚拟语气

重点: 情态动词的考点是: 必要性、推测、可能性、请求、允许: (should) + do, would rather 虚拟语气

高考考点分布: 推测问题, 请求允许允诺题, 情态动词及用法问题, 虚拟语气问题.

二. 知识讲解

1. 情态动词基本用法.

① can, be able to 和 could.

1) can 和 be able to 表能力. 意思上区别不大. 但 can 只有现在和过去时, 而 be able to 则有更多形式. 成功完成某动作, 有能力做, 用 be able to, 不用 can. 此时的 be able to 相当于 manage to, 表示经一番努力完成某事.

eg. Can you use chopsticks?

The wounded man still was able to get to the village and was saved.

2) can 和 could 都表能力、技能、许可、建议或请求和可能性. 但比较委婉客气地提出问题或陈述看法, 一般用 could, 回答时则用 can.

eg. Can I help you?

Could you help me carry the bag?

② may, might

1) 表示可能: may 可能性大于 might.

Tips: may 用于祈使句表祝愿.

eg. — Why isn't he in class?

eg. May you return in safety.

— He may be sick. (可能性大)

愿你平安归来.

He might be sick. (可能性小)



2) 表允许: may 用于现在时或将来时, might 常用在间接引语中表过去时, 但

might 也可用于现在时, 表比较委婉的语气, 此时回答用 may.

eg. He says he may leave.

He said we might leave.

3) 表建议或请求, 但 might 比 may 更客气, 意思更肯定而不耐否定的含义.

eg. — May / Might I use your bike? [联想·扩展]

— Yes, you can / may.

— No, you ~~may~~ mustn't. / can't.

May well + 动词原形: 竟全能, 很可能

may as well + 动词原形: 最好, 满可以,

倒不如.

③ must

1) must 表必须, 应该, 无时态变化.

eg. You must do everything as I do.

2) must 表肯定的推测.

eg. The light is still on, so he must be at home.

3) mustn't 表禁止做某事

eg. You mustn't smoke in the office.

④ have to

have to 表“必须, 不得不”, 是由于某种外界(客观)原因而“必须”, “不得不”做某事, 也可表示经常的或习惯性的事“必须”做。have to 的否定形式表示不必。have to 可用于各种时态。

eg. You will have to clean your own boots when you join the army.

I have to be at my office every evening.



④ should / ought to

1) 表应当, 应该。should 语气比 ought to 轻。

eg. You should / ought to work hard.

2) 否定形式表禁止。

eg. Children shouldn't / ought not to smoke.

3) should 可表(竟然)。

eg. He should cheat in the important exam.

4) should 可表陈述意见, 提出建议或请求; 而 ought to 可表劝告之意。

eg. You ought to respect your parents.

He suggested that they should leave at once.

⑤ will / would

1) will 用于各种人称表示“意志”“意愿”“决心”等, 否定式 won't + 动词。

eg. I'll tell you all about it.

Tom won't do such a thing.

2) will 用于疑问句中, 常用在第二人称表示向谈话的对象提出“请求”或“询问”。

eg. Will you please tell her the news when you see her?

3) will 表习惯性动作, 有“总是”、“惯于”的含义。

eg. Fish will die out of water.



4) would 表委婉的请求、建议或意愿。

eg. Would you please be quiet.

*5) would 表示过去反复发生的动作。

eg. When I passed my school, I would see my teachers who taught me 5 years ago.

⑦ need

need 作“必要”讲，既可作情态动词，也可作实义动词。作实义动词时后面的动词不定式要 to，其变化与一般动词相同。

eg. He needn't do it. (情态动词)

He doesn't need to do it. (实义动词)

I need to think it over. (实义动词)

— Need you go now?

* — Yes, I must. / No, I needn't. (情态动词)

⑧ dare

dare 表示“敢”，作为情态动词时，主要用在疑问句和否定句中。dare 若作实义动词，后可加 to，也可省略。dare 与 need 用法相似。

eg. How dare you say that? (情态动词)

She doesn't dare (to) ask her father. (实义动词)

She dare not ask her father. (情态动词)

He dare not do it. (情态动词)

⑨ used to 表示过去常发生的动作或习惯，但现在不复存在了。

eg. He used to smoke.



⑩ shall

shall 作为情态动词用于第二、三人称，表示说话人的意愿，有“命令”“警告”“允诺”“威胁”。

eg. We shall do as our teachers say. (表命令)

You shall have the book as soon as I finish it. (表允诺)

2) 在疑问句中, shall 用于征求对方的意见或请求指示, 常用于第(一、三)人称。

eg. Where shall he wait for us.

3) shall 可用于宣布法律条文、规定, 用于第(三)人称。

eg. It has been announced that candidates shall remain in their seats until all the papers have been collected.

Tips: shall 的三种用法, 人称适用分别是“二、三”, “一、三”, “三”。

⑩ 情态动词 + have done 用法 (即对过去的推测)

情态动词 + 完成时

用法

must have done

想必/一定做了 否定: can't/couldn't have done

can/could have done

1) 本来能够做 >> 过去可能会做

cannot/could not have done

2) 过去不可能 >> 过去没能够

may/might have done

也许已经做... 用于否定/肯定句。(肯定句中表“可能不”)

should/ought to have done

本该做, 但实际上未做

should not/ought not to have done

本不该做而做了

needn't have done

本不必做而做了

had better have done

当时最好做了 (否定: had better not have done)

would rather have done

宁愿当时做了 (否定: would rather not have done)

would like/love to have done

过去愿意做但未做成



⑪ “宁愿做某事”的用法

{ would rather do sth. (than do sth.)

{ would do sth. rather than do sth. Tips: 高中主要考结构,
 would rather do sth. 背出来即可.

{ prefer to do sth.
 prefer to do sth. rather than do sth.
 prefer doing sth. to doing sth.

2. 虚拟语气的几种用法

① 条件虚拟语气

时态	If 从句	主句
past	had done	would / should have done
present	were / did	would / should do
future	were / did	would / should do
	were to do	
	should do	

eg. If I had time, I would have dropped by.

If I were you, I would refuse the money.

If you came / were to come / should come tomorrow, I would give it to you.

* 省略句

在条件句中可省略if, 把 were, had, should 提到句首, 成为倒装句式. (否定不缩写)

eg. Were I you, I would take his advice.

Had he been in your position, you'd probably have done the same.

Were it not for ... > 否定不缩写, 改成 Weren't it for X

Had it not for ... Hadn't it for X



* 错误类型: 虚拟语气条件句是表示对过去的虚拟, 而主句表示对现在的虚拟. 看表时前后时

eg. If you had followed his advice, you would be better now studied hard before, you would be a college student.

② 用 should 来表示虚拟

1) 表示建议、愿望、命令等词后的宾语从句中, 可以归纳为“一坚持 (insist), 二命令 (order, command), 三建议 (advise, suggest, propose), 四要求 (demand, decline, require, request)”

eg. He suggested that we (should) start off early the next day.

They insisted that the boy (should) go with them.

2) 各类词性从句 (包括主语从句, 表语从句, 同位语从句)

It's necessary / important / strange / natural / essential, that sb (should) do sth.
 It's a pity / a shame / no wonder
 It's suggested / advised ...

或在 suggestion, proposal, order, idea, advice 等词后的表语从句, 同位语从句中用虚拟语气, 从句中的谓语动词 “should” 可以省略。

eg. It's strange that he should have acted toward his parents like that.

My idea is that we should think it over before accepting it.

We all agreed to his suggestion that we should go to Dalian for sightseeing.

③ 用过去式表示虚拟, 需要何构建一个时态。

1) I wish that + 从句 | had done (过去) I wish I had accepted it yesterday.

were / did (现在) I wish I were a bird.

should / ~~were to do~~ (将来) I wish we should win the game tomorrow.

2) If only + 从句 | 要是...就好了。 If only I were a boy.

* only if... 只有...才 | 只要 If only he comes, I will come. > 不是虚拟

但愿(实际) If only he comes here early.



3) 主句 + as if + 从句, 用法同 wish * 若句子表示实际情况则不用虚拟,

as though / even if / even though 而表陈述语气。

as if | to do

虚拟

陈述语气

eg. He behaved as if nothing had happened.

4) It's time + 从句

It's (high/about) time (that) sb. | did

| should do

eg. It's the time we left.

5) would rather

had rather

would prefer

(that) sb.

had done (过去)

were/did (现在/将来)

eg. I'd rather you came tomorrow.

④ 从句 + otherwise 否则 + 主句

or

否则

without

but for / if it were not for } + 从句

with / but / but that | 比较级

用法同 1

⑤ in case 一般不用

* lest (唯恐, 为不使)

for fear that 一般不用

} should do sth

以防...

* in case 引导状语从句也可不虚拟.

eg. He tasted it carefully in case it was hot.



① 宾语从句中, 在 ask (要求), move (提议), urge (主张) 等词后, 用 should 表虚拟。
★ 以上 ① 种, 基本包括虚拟再全部用法, 必须全部记住, 保证此类题目无忧!

三. 例题讲解

1. — I left my handbag on the train, but luckily someone gave it to a railway official. (2011 江苏)

— How unbelievable to get it back! I mean, someone _____ it.

- A. will have stolen B. might have stolen
C. should have stolen D. must have stolen

选 B. 句意: 我把手提包落在车上, 不过幸运的是, 有人把包交给了交警。

— 把包拿回来是多么不可思议啊! 我的意思是, 有人可能偷了你的包。

will have stolen 为将来完成时, 而此事已过去, 故 X

might have stolen 为可能已经偷了, 符合语境, 故选 B

should have stolen 表示本应该偷而事实上有没有。

must have stolen 表肯定偷了, 均不符题意。

2. They _____ have arrived at lunchtime, but their flight was delayed. (2011 课标·全国 I)

- A. will B. can C. must D. should

选 D. 句意: 他们本应该在午餐时间到达, 可能是他们的飞机晚点了。

can 用在疑问句, 否定句表可能

must have done 表推测

should have done 表过去该做而未做

3. If you _____ smoke, please go outside. (全国 I)

- A. can B. should C. must D. may



选 C. 句意: 如果你非要抽烟, 请到外面去。must 表非要, 偏要

4. We _____ John's name on the race list yesterday but for his recent injury.

A. will put B. will have put C. would put D. would have put

选D. 句意: 要不是John最近受伤了, 我们昨天就把他的名字加到比赛的名单上了.

因题目可知, 此处与过去事实相反的虚拟语气, 故用would/should/could/might have done.

5. I _____ have watched that movie. — It'll give me horrible dreams.

A. shouldn't B. needn't C. couldn't D. mustn't (2010. 山东)

选A. 句意: 我不该去看那部电影——它会使我做噩梦的.

shouldn't have done 本不该干, 但干了.

needn't have done 本不必要干, 但干了.

couldn't have done 表推测, 不可能干某事.

无 mustn't have done 结构.

6. Teachers recommend parents _____ their children under 12 to ride bicycles to school for safety. (2010. 福建)

A. not allow B. do not allow

C. mustn't allow D. couldn't allow

选A. 句意: 为了安全起见, 老师建议家长不要让12岁以下的孩子骑自行车上学.

recommend, suggest, insist, order, request, advise 等表“建议, 命令, 要求”的动词.

后常接宾语从句. (should) do sth., should 可省略.

7. If he _____ my advice, he wouldn't have lost his job. (2010. 湖南)

A. followed B. should follow C. had followed D. would follow

选C. 句意: 如果他(当时)接受了我的建议, 就不会丢掉他的工作了.



这是对过去的虚拟, 故选C.

专题九 介词、连词、并列句

一. 考纲解读

考点: 1. 介词基本用法及介词辨析; 2. 表转折、因果的并列连词, 表引导状语从句、名词性从句的从属连词; 3. 并列句用法.

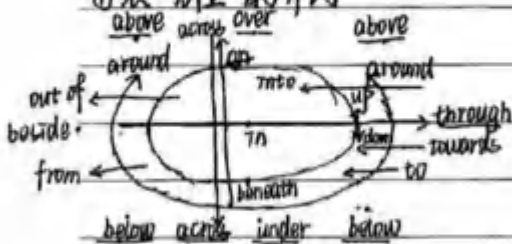
重点: 1. 介词的各种搭配; 2. 并列连词, 从属连词引导从句. 3. 掌握 and, or, but, so, while 等并列连词的用法; 4. 能在复复主句中判断从句与主句逻辑关系, 选出适当连词.

高考考点: 介词辨析 1 题 并列句 1 题.

二. 知识归纳

1. 介词

① 表“方位”的介词



← 将地球图弄清楚, 大部分方位介词就没有问题了.

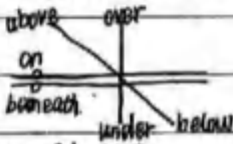
1) above/below, over/under, on/beneath

above, over, on 表示“在...之上”; below, under, beneath 表示“在...之下”.

above 侧重于相对的水平高度, 不一定在正上方, 其反义词是 below.

over 侧重于垂直高度, 侧重于正上方, 其反义词是 under.

on 侧重于与物体表面接触, 其反义词是 beneath.
The sun is above the mountain in the east.



2. in, on, to



○ (包含) in

表在其范围内

○ (相邻) to

在某范围外

○ (相邻) on

“相邻”“接壤”

3) across, over, through, past

1) across 意为“横穿, 穿越”, 表示运动发生在物体的表面。

2) over 意为“越过, 超过”, 表示运动发生在物体的上方。

3) through 意为“穿过, 越过”, 表示运动发生在某物的内部, 从一个洞中穿过。

4) past 意为“从...旁经过”, 表示运动发生在某物的旁边。



4) at, in, on

at: 用于指较小的地方, 用于门牌号前。

in: 用于指较大的地方, 若表示“在...上”, 还指接触深度、侧度深度, 如打击某人的脸、眼睛、胸、肩、脚、手。

on: 一般指与面或线的接触, 侧度表面, 如打击某人的头、额、耳、颈、肩、腿, 用 on。

eg. He arrived at the village.

He arrived in Beijing.

There are lots of apples on the tree. * 表植物本身长出的枝叶花果用 on。

Birds often play in the trees. * 表植物本身以外的用 in。

5) among, between

among, 在...之间, 用于三者或三者以上的人或物。

between, 两者之间

* 当句中出现 divide, share 等词时, 若后面跟着几个单数名词, 则用 between; 若后面跟的是复数名词, 用 among, between 均可。

② 表“时间”的介词

1) at, in, on, by.

at: 指某一时点; 表节日, eg. at 5 o'clock; at night; at Christmas.



in: 指较长时间段(如上午、下午、晚上、月、年等), eg. in the 1990s; in April; in the morning.

* 若具体到某日或特定的年、下午、晚上用 on。

on: 表具体某一天或一个特定时间, 如某日 某节日 某周日; 还可构成短语 on time "表准时", 而 in time 是 "及时".

eg. on October 1st; on a rainy day

by: 在...期间; 不迟于, 在(某时)前

eg. He worked by day and slept by night. 他白天工作, 晚上睡觉.

He must have arrived there by noon.

* 当时间为词被 this, that, last, next, some, every 等词限时时, 通常不用介词.

eg. We visited the factory last month.

Tips: 歌诀牢记.

年月周前要用 in, 日子前不用不行.

遇到 11 号要用 on, 上午下午又是 in.

要说 某日下午, 把 in 换 on 才行.

午夜黄昏用 at, 周末用 on 也不错.

at 用在时刻前, past 要加, to 要减.

注: 黄昏: at dusk

黎明: at daybreak / dawn

>> in, after

in: 在...时间之后, 此时所修饰名词必须表将来, 后面必须是一段时间, 否则用 after, late

eg. My father will be back in three days.

My father will be back after 3 o'clock.

My father ~~come~~ back after 3 days / 3 days later.

after: 在...之后, 与一段时间连用, 相当于 "一段时间 + later".

与时间点连用, 表将来.



eg. 用 in 的举例.

2) for, from, since

for: 后接表时间段的介词词组, 表行为状态持续多久.

from: 后接表时间点的介词词组, 表行为或状态的起始点, 不涉及持续时间的长短.

since: 后接表时间点的介词词组, 不仅表行为或状态起始点, 还强调持续性.

eg. Mr Green enjoyed the country life and lived there for almost 5 years after his retirement. 一段时间.

My younger sister began to learn dance from the age of three.

··· 时间点, 起始点···

John has been doing his homework since 1 o'clock.

时间点, 起始点, 和持续

③表“方法、方式、手段”的介词

o by, in, with, through

by: 不涉及交通工具的介词, 用 by; 涉及交通工具的介词用 by, 但为词用单数.

eg. by water / air / land / sea.

by bike / taxi / plane / ship

on / in: 旅行方式涉及确定的特指的交通工具, 为词前有修饰语.

eg. travel in this plane

leave on an early train

with: 用于有形的工具或身体的某些器官.

eg. We see with our eyes, hear with our ears and walk with our legs.

· 比较: The clothes were made by hand.

with her own hands.



through: 通过 (泛指抽象概念)

eg. You can master English through more practice.

in: "用", 后常接语言、材料、方式等

eg: in English 用英语

in blue ink 用蓝墨水

* 表示用...方法方式

in this/that/the same way

by this/that ... means

means of

with this/that ... method

④ 表原因的介词

1) at, with, for, from, of, over

at: 表某种情绪的起因, 通常与喜、怒、吃惊等形容词连用。

eg: You didn't look very surprised at the news of his failure.

with: 多用于表情绪的形容词或身体动作或状态的动词之后表某种心理的原因。

eg: Her face went red with anger.

for: 与表感情的抽象名词连用, 与 reason, famous 连用

eg: for this reason

be famous for ...

from: 常接抽象名词, 表自然或间接原因。

eg: suffer from hungry



of: 多用于表自身原因

eg: I'm ashamed of myself for being so stupid.

*. It is + adj + of sb to do sth = sb be + adj + to do sth.

表性格特征. 常用词: kind, stupid, considerate, impolite, cruel, clever...

It is + adj + for sb to do sth.

常用词: important, necessary, possible, impossible...

over: 常用于带有感情色彩的词, 如 cry, quarrel, laugh, sigh.

eg: These men have quarreled over the price of a load of hay.

【联想打版】 of + 抽象名词 = 形容词

of great / much + 抽象名词 = very + adj.

of no + 抽象名词 = not + adj.

eg. It is of great / much value = It is very valuable.

The camel is of great help to her. = The camel is very helpful.

It is of no use. = It is not useful = It is useless.

⑤ 表“除了”的介词

except, besides, but, except for, apart from.

1) except “除...外”, 指整体里面排除部分, 其宾语为整体中的名词的同位语 (人或物).

a) besides 是“除...外(尚有)”的意思, 句中常有 other, others, also, else 等词.

b) but “除...外”, 在句中常与 nobody, none, no one, nothing, anything, everyone, all, who 等连用, 后面接名词, 代词或不定式.

3) except for 表示“除了”和“除...外”, 指对非同类事物的排除, 它所叙述的事物或事件部分地构成整个句子的主要意思.

4) except that / when 是连词, 后面接句子.

4) apart from 可表示“除...外(尚有)”“除...外(没有)”, 故可用来自替 besides, except, or-
cept 等.



All are present except Helen. Helen 是 All 除她以外大家都到了. (她没来)

Two others were on duty besides Helen. 除她以外还有两个人值日. (她和其他两个人值日)

The composition is very good except for a few spelling mistakes. 这篇作文写得很好. 只是有少数拼写错误.

I did nothing but write a letter this morning. 今天早晨除了写信我到后什么也没做.

I know nothing of that man except that he's from Sichuan. 除了知道他来自四川外, 我对那人一无所知.

Apart from pinching your wrist, what is fire used for? 除了用手夹取取暖, 还有什么用处?

⑥ 高考热点词汇

1) by

1) 在...旁边,靠近

They are planning to camp by the lake this summer.

今年夏天他们打算到湖边露营。

2) 用...通过,借由

The house is heated by gas.

这房子是用天然气取暖的。

3) 按照...按...表示频率或程度

They are paid by the day.

他们按天领工资的报酬。

Bananas are usually sold by weight.

香蕉通常按重量卖。

4) 在...之前,在...之前

We can finish the work by the end of this month.

五个月之前我们就可以完成工作了。

5) 原因,因...用...被...所... (后接动词的过去分词)

The book was written by an American writer.

这本书是由美国作家写的。

The bullet missed him by two inches.

子弹差两英寸才击中他。

6) 因为...由于...

I met him in the street by chance.

我在街上偶然遇到他。

He caught a cold by playing soccer in the rain.

他在雨中踢球是感冒的原因。

7) 把...的地方... catch, hit, lead 等动词通用,承上... 身体的一部分... 部分... 的... (the 指身体部分)

The mother led the child by the hand when crossing the street.

那妈妈牵着孩子的手过马路。

8) 关于..., 就..., 职业... (职业)

She is a doctor by profession.

她的职业是医生。

They came through the fields, not only by the hill road.

他们是穿过田野而不是沿着山路来的。

2) with

1) 和...一起

They are discussing the matter with the foreign friends.

他们和外国朋友们一起讨论这个问题。

2) 用...是...

He is writing with a pen. 他正在用钢笔写字。

3) 和...一起, 带有... (表示伴随)

I have no money with me. 我身上没带钱。

4) 对... (表示对象)

He is angry with her. 他生她的气。

5) 尽管, 虽然 (表示让步)

With all his achievements, he remains modest.

他尽管很有成就, 但仍然很谦虚。

6) 用... with 是复合结构

He left, with the door open. = door open.

他走后, 门开着。

7) 为... 用... (表示原因)

My mother is in bed with a bad cold.

我母亲患重感冒, 卧病在床。

8) 与... 一起, 随着...

The girl seemed to be growing prettier with each day.

那女孩好像长得一天比一天漂亮。

9) 若是 (表示条件)

With more money, I would be able to buy it.

钱多一些的话, 我就买得起。

Tip: 这两个词是高考中常出现的词。

以上是对其用法的基本总结, 持

这些理解, 记好后再化为己用。

⑦ 介词与某些词类的搭配



1) 这些词是较为常用的, 在此对其进行归纳, 若已掌握, 所有接忽略, 尚

未掌握的词则标注后重点记忆(下方), 无需担心

小名词与介词的固定搭配。

① 要求用 to 的形容词: key, answer, visit, apology, introduction, attitude, monument, devotion, journey, entrance 等。

* 同一形容词与不同介词搭配，含义不同。如：

② 要求用 in 的形容词: interest, expert 等。
③ 要求用 on 的形容词: mercy, congratulations, effect 等。
④ 要求用其他介词的形容词: pride (for), respect (for), victory (over), struggle (with), excuse (for), (for) fear (of) 等。

He is good to her. 他对她友好。
The advice is good for her.
这条建议对她有益。

① 形容词与介词的固定搭配。

① 要求用 at 的形容词: angry, good, bad, clever, surprised, excited, puzzled, frightened.

② 要求用 of 的形容词: afraid, sure, certain, full, tired, fond, proud, worthy.

He is tired of the work. 厌倦……
He is tired with / from the work.
疲惫做……

③ 要求用 with 的形容词: angry, strict, careful, busy, popular, patient.

④ 要求用 in 的形容词: weak, strict, rich, interested, successful, slow.

⑤ 要求用 to 的形容词: next, good, polite, kind, cruel, rude, known, married, close, similar, due.

⑥ 要求用 for 的形容词: sorry, famous, fit, unfit, eager, anxious, hungry.

⑦ 要求用 from 的形容词: far, different, free, safe, absent.

⑧ 要求用 about 的形容词: sorry, worried, curious, anxious, sure, certain.

⇒ 此处留给大拿自己练习

Tip: 介词小结: 虽然介词内容很多, 但属于死卷, 只要会分析, 记住用法, 并没什么难的。

很多手译析题他们已掌握, 有提笔就写, 理解记忆很重要, 一般只看个三遍就

没什么问题了, 考前重点复习下自己平时常错, 常分不清的, 没有时间的话不需要大面积刷网。

2. 连词

① 按照属性进行分类, 连词可分为并列连词, 从属连词。并列连词引导并列句, 从属连词可引导名词性从句, 状语从句。

下面这个表格中列举了各种连词, 但引导名词性从句的从属连词未列出, 这里先补充一下: that, whether, if, who, whom, whose, what, which, when, where,



why, whatever, whomever, whoever.

并列连词	并列(联合)	and, both...and..., neither...nor..., not only...but also..., as well as	
	转折(对比)	but, while, yet, whereas, however	由于从属连词引导的名词性从句和状语从句的内容在主题句中早已讲过, 此处就不赘述。先讲解并列连词。
	因果	so, for	
	选择	or, or else, either...or...	
从属连词	时间连词	after, as, before, since, till, until, when, while, as soon as, whenever, the moment, the first time	
	地点连词	wherever	
	方式连词	as, as if, as though	
	原因连词	considering (that), now that, because, since, as, seeing that	
	目的连词	so that, in order that, in case (that), lest (that), for fear that	
	让步连词	so that, matter that so...that, such...that	
	条件连词	if, unless, as long as, on condition that, supposing (that), provided/providing that	
	让步连词	though, although, even if, even though, no matter..., whatever	
	比较连词	as, than, as...as..., not so...as	

② and

1) "和" "并且"

2) 三个或三个以上的词连接, 每个词后加逗号, 最后一个单词前加 and.

eg. He enjoys tennis, basketball and football.

3) 祈使句后可接 and

eg. Go straight on, and you will see the library.

③ but

1) "但是"



2) 含 but 的习惯语

all but 几乎, 将近 but for 除了 not that...but that... 不是因为...而是因为
nothing but 只是 but then 不过, 在另一方面.

④ not only ... but also ...

1) 作并列连词, 可连接相同作用的单词、短语或分句。

eg. Not only you but also I am a student. (并列主语)

Success depends not only on talent but also on effort. (并列宾语)

2) 如果连接两个主语, 则谓语动词遵循“就近一致”原则。

eg. Not only you but also I ~~am~~ wrong.

看离此动词最近的主语, 此处是 I.

3) Not only 置于句首, 应倒装, 是部分倒装。

eg. Not only did he make a promise, but he kept it.

4) not only ... but also 中的 only 可用 merely, alone 代替, also 可省。

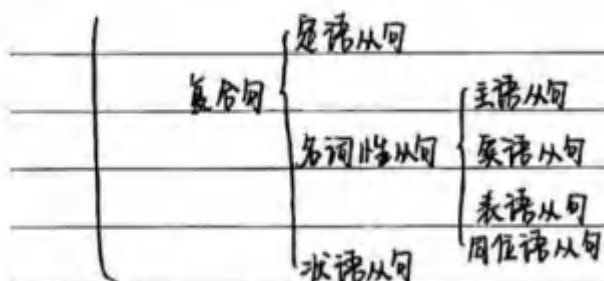
eg. It is not only/merely/alone heavy, but (also) rough.

5) either ... or ... 表选择, 也遵循“就近一致”原则

eg. Either you leave this house or I'll call the police.

3. 并列句.

句子	简单句	主语 + 谓语 (S+V)
		主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 (S+V+O)
		主 + 谓 + 宾 + 宾补 (S+V+O+C)
		主 + 谓 + 宾 + 宾 (S+V+O+O)
		主 + 系动词 + 表语 (S+be+P)
并列句	表递进	and, not, not only ... but also ..., neither ... nor ..., not ... but ...
	表转折	but, yet, whereas, while
	表选择	either ... or ..., or ..., otherwise
	表因果	so, for
		while (而, 却), when (空时, 那时)



* when 用作连词表“这时, 当时” \propto and at this / that time

常用于下列句式:

① sb was doing sth when ...

② sb was about to do / going to do / on the point of doing sth when

③ sb had just ~~done~~ done sth when ...

while 表对比, 意为“而, 不过”

eg. He likes pop music, while I am fond of folk music.

三. 例题讲解.

1. This shop will be closed for repairs _____ further notice.

A. with B. until C. for D. at

(2011, 大纲全国)

选 B. 直到...为止.

2. So far we have done a lot to build a low-carbon economy but it is _____ ideal. We have to work still harder. (江苏高考)

选 B. next

A. next to B. far from C. out of D. due to

选 B. next to 靠近 out of 脱离 far from 远非 due to 由于

句意: 到目前为止, 为建立低碳经济, 我们已经做了很多, 但这还远非理想, 我们仍需进一步努力。



3. I agree to his suggestion _____ the condition that he drops all charges.

A. by B. in C. on D. to (辽宁高考)

选C. on the condition that 意为“条件是, 如果...”

4. I guess we've already talked about this before but I'll ask you again just _____ (浙江高考)

A. by nature B. in return ... C. in case D. by chance

选C. 句意: 我估计我们以前讨论过此事, 不过我再问你一次以防我记错了.

by nature 本来, 天生

in case 以防万一

in return 作为回报

by chance 偶然地

5. Help others whenever you can _____ you will make the world a nicer place to live on. (辽宁高考)

A. and B. or C. unless D. but

选A. 本题考查“祈使句+and/or+句子”

and 表承接 or 表选择转折 unless 表条件除非 but 表转折

6. — I wonder how much you charge for your service.

— This The first two are free _____ the third costs 30. (安徽高考)

A. while B. until C. when D. before

选A. 句意: “我想知道你的服务收费多少?” “前两项是免费的, 但第三项收费30元。”

根据题意, 空格前后是对比关系, while 表示“而, 却”。

until 直到...为止 when 与...时候 before 在...之前。



专题十 状语从句, 名词性从句, 复合从句

一. 考纲解读

考点: 1. 状语从句 (时间, 条件, 方式, 原因, 让步, 比较, 地点, 目的/结果)

2. 名词性从句 (主语从句, 宾语从句, 表语从句, 同位语从句)

3. 复合从句

重点: 1. 状语从句若含有交叉综合特点, 干扰项会从复合从句, 名词性从句, 并列句角度进行干扰。

2. 名词性从句若含有重点, 是连接词, 主要有 what, whatever, whenever, where.

3. 复合从句重点是关系代词, 关系副词, 主要有 as, which, where; 非限制性复合从句结构, 涉及较复杂的定语从句, 名词性从句 + 介词 + which / whom.

高考考点: 状语从句 3 题, 名词性从句 4 题, 复合从句 5 题.

二. 知识归纳

1. 状语从句

① 时间状语从句

12. when, while, as

when: 可引导一个持续动作或短暂动作; 可用于主从句同时发生或从句先行主句后发生。

eg. When I lived there, I used to go to the seashore on Sundays.

* 当 when 引导的时间状语从句是系表结构 (即 be + 表语) 而且其主语与主句一致, 表语是一个名词, 可用 as 省略句代替。

* 必须一致, 否则要加逻辑

eg. As a young man, (= When he was a young man)

主语, 或为独立主格。

he was fond of hunting.



while: 引导持续性动作, 侧重主句动作与从句对比。

eg. Please don't talk so loud while others are working.

as: 表主从句两个动作交替进行或同时完成, 可译为“一边...一边...”或“随着...”

eg. As time goes on, it's getting warmer and warmer.

随着时间的推移, 天气变得越来越暖和了。

* 若主句是短暂动作, 从句用延续性动词进行时态表一段时间内进行的动作。

此时 when, while 与 as 可互换着使用。

eg. When/While/As I was talking about the issue, I came across a friend.

2) as soon as, immediately, directly, instantly, the moment, the minute,

the instant, no sooner... than..., hardly/scarcely... when..., once.

这些词译为“一...就...”, 从句中用一般现在时代替将来时态。

* 前面已提过的关于 no sooner... than..., hardly/scarcely... when... 的倒装, 此

处再复习一下。

No sooner	}	had sb. done sth.	}	than + 过去式	不倒
Hardly/Scarcely				when + 过去式	不倒

eg. Hardly had I got home when it began to rain.

3) till, until, not... until.

肯定句: 主句谓语动词是延续性, 肯定句式, 意“某动作一直持续到某时间点才停止”。

eg. He remained there until/till she arrived.

否定句: 主句谓语动词是非延续性, 意“某动作在某时间才开始”。

eg. He won't go to bed till/until she returns.

* till 不可置于句首, until 可以。

eg. Until you told me I had no idea of it.

not... until 的强调, 倒装。



强调: It is/was not until... that...

倒装 Not until... did sb. do...

eg. It was not until you told me that I had any idea of it.
Not until you told me did I have any idea of it.

A) before, since

before: 还未...就...; 不到...就...; ...才...; 还没来得及

eg. We hadn't run a mile before he ~~felt~~^{felt} tired.

before 从句中谓语不用否定式。

eg. Before they reached the station, the train had gone.

* It will be + 一段时间 + before ... 还要多久才...

eg. It will be half a year before I come back.

It won't be long before we meet again.

since: 从句的谓语动词是非延续性, 主句谓语动词是延续性或反复发生的。

从句用态: was / were / did

主句用时态: has / have done

has / have been doing

eg. I have written home four times since I came here.

She has been working in this factory since she left.

* It is + 一段时间 + since 从句。句意取决于从句谓语动词是否持续性动词。

eg. It is three years since the war broke out.

自战争爆发以来(有)三年了。

短暂性

It is three years ^有 since I smoked a cigar. 持续性

我(不)吸烟有三年了。(= since I stopped smoking a cigar.)

若要译成我吸烟有三年了应为:



It is three years since I began to smoke.

持续性。

5) every time, each time, next time, the first time, any time, all the time. 表示“每当...; 每次...; 下次...”。

eg. Every / Each time I was in trouble, he would come to help me out.
The last time she saw James, he was lying in the bed.

② 地点状语从句 (where, wherever)

where, wherever 指具体地点时, 从句可用于主句之前或之后。

eg. We should go where the Party needs us most.

表抽象条件时, 从句必须放在主句之前。

eg. Where there is a will, there is a way. 有志者, 事竟成。

Wherever there is smoke, there is a fire. 无风不起浪。

* 注意区分 where 引导的定语从句与状语从句。

eg. You'd better make a mark where you have any questions.
状从

You'd better make a mark at the (place) where you have any questions.
定从

③ 原因状语从句

because, since, as, now that, seeing that, considering that.

区别	位置	内涵	语气	能否回答 why	能否被强调
because (因为)	主句前或后	强调因果关系	强	能	能
as (由于)	主句前或后	双方都知道	弱	不能	不能
since / now that (既然)	主句前	道的原因			



* when 也可表原因, 意为“既然, 考虑到”, 相当于 *since, considering that*.

eg. It was foolish of you to take a taxi when you could walk there five minutes.

④ 目的状语从句

1) *in order that / so that*

“以便, 为了”, 它们引导的状语从句要带情态动词. *in order that* 比 *so that* 正式, 可置于主句前后, *so that* 只能置于句之后.

eg. I'll speak slowly, so that you can understand me.

In order that we might see the sunrise, we started for the peak early.

2) *for fear that / in case*

for fear that: 害怕, 担心.

in case: 以防万一.

eg. Mary didn't want to go out of bed, for fear that she might wake her baby up.

Take your raincoat, in case it rains.

⑤ 结果状语从句

1) *so that, so... that, such... that...*

非正式语境中, *so... that, such... that* 引导的句子中 *that* 可省.

2) *too... to... (太... 而不能...), enough to... (达到某种程度可以)*



so... as to (那么... 以至于...) 也可表结果.

eg. He didn't get up early enough to catch the bus.
up too late to catch the bus.

He got up so late as to miss the bus.

⑥ 条件状语从句.

if, unless (= if ... not 如果不; 除非...; 否则...), so/as long as (只要)

In case (万一), (in) condition that (条件是), suppose/supposing (假设, 如果)
provided that (如果)

eg. As long as you don't lose heart, you will succeed.

Suppose / Supposing (that) they refuse us, who else can we turn to for help?

⑦ 方式状语从句 (as as if / though)

* as if / though 引导的从句一般用虚拟语气, 但若从句中陈述的情况很可能实现, 也可用陈述语气.

eg. Do as you are told to, or you'll be fired.

I feel as if I have a fever. (陈述语气)

The old lady treats the boy as if he were her own son. (虚拟)

⑧ 让步状语从句.

1) though / although (尽管, 虽然), even though / even if (即使)

although 与 though 一般可互换 渐弱与 yet, still, nevertheless, 不能与 but 连用.

eg. Even though / if it is raining, I will go. (陈述)

Even if I were busy, I would go. (虚拟)

* though 引用在句末: "可是, 然而".

eg. He said he would come; he didn't, though.



2) as / though 引导让步状语从句倒装.

adj }
 adv } + as/though + 主 + 谓, 主句
 形容词 }
 动词原形 }

eg. Child as he is, he knows a lot.

Much as I like it, I won't buy it.

Smart as she is, she doesn't study hard.

3) Whether ... or ... (不管... 还是...);

疑问词 + -ever (不管..., 无论...)

no matter + 疑问词 (不管...; 无论...)

eg. ~~We~~ Whether you believe it or not, it is true.

Whatever (= No matter what) you say, he won't believe you.

无论你说什么, 他都不会相信你。

Whoever you are (= No matter who you are), you must obey the rules.

4) when, while 作从属连词, 相当于 although.

eg. While I admit that there are problems I don't agree that they cannot be solved. 尽管我承认有问题存在, 但我不同意说这些问题不能解决。

⑨ 比较状语从句 借助于副词、形容词、副词、形容词等部分

⑩ 状语从句中的省略

1) 如果状语从句中的主语和主句中的主语一致且从句中含 be 动词, 从句中的主语和 be 可省。



when/while/as/if/unless/until/once/even if/even though/than + 分词 省略

eg. When crossing (= when you are crossing) the street, you should be careful.

Unless invited (= Unless I am invited), I won't go to the evening party.

while, as if / though + 从句的省略结构

eg. While in America (= While I was in America), I learned a lot about American customs.

as, as if / though + 名词的省略结构.

eg. My stepfather (继父) treated me as if my own father. (= as if he were my own father.) as if 虚拟.

whether, though, when + 形容词的省略结构.

eg. Though young (= Though he is young), he knows a lot about Chinese history.

2) 如果状语从句中的主语是 it, 谓语是 be, 或从句是 there be 句型时, 常可把 it 和 be 或 there be 省略.

if, unless, when, whenever + 形容词的省略结构.

eg. Some soldiers would ask him about the three questions whenever possible. (= whenever it was possible)

if any, if only ..., if not ..., if at all 的省略结构.

eg. There is little, if any, difference between them.

Her voice was, if not perfect, at least nearly so.

如果 as, than 引导的比较状语从句前后向意非常明确, 可省略 as, than 从句中成分.



eg. Mary is wearing the same coat as Jane. (= as Jane wears the coat.)

2. 名词性从句.

名词性从句主要包括4种: 主语从句, 宾语从句, 表语从句, 同位语从句, 主要有4种

从句结构: 以that引导的从句; 以whether / if 引导的从句; 以特殊疑问词引导的从句; 以what 或 wh-ever 等连接词引导的名词性关系从句。as if / as though 也引导表语从句。

	主语从句	表语从句		宾语从句	同位语从句
		作主语从句	作表语从句		
that	一般不省略	可以省略	一般不省略	一般不省略	一般不省略
whether / if (是否)	用于从句时 只用whether	用whether / if 均可, 但有区别	只用whether	只用whether	只用whether
特殊疑问句	注意: 语序要用陈述语序				
名词性关系从句	注意: 语序要用陈述语序				

① that

1) 主语从句

that 从句作主语时, 常用it作形式主语, 常见的句型有。

It + be + 形容词 (obvious, true, natural, surprising, good, wonderful, funny, possible, likely, certain, probable, etc.) + that 从句.

eg. It is certain that she will do well in her exam.

It + be + 名词(词组) (no wonder, an honor, a good thing, a pity, no surprise) + that 从句.

eg. It's no wonder that our team has won the game.

It + be + 过去分词 (said, reported, thought, expected, decided, announced, arranged) + that 从句.

eg. It is said that Mr. Green has arrived in Beijing.



在口语和非正式文体中, that 常可省略, 尤其是在非常短的句子中, that

一般不必要, 但 that 从句位于句首时, 连词 that 是绝对不可省略的。

eg. It's a pity (that) you're leaving.

That we are invited to a concert this evening is good news to us.

2) 宾语从句

常见可接 that 从句作宾语的动词有 see, say, know, imagine, discover, believe, tell, show, think, consider, be sure, be afraid.

在可以接复合宾语的动词后, 如 think, make, consider 等, 可用 it 作形式宾语。

eg. Do you know (that) he has joined the army?

We think it highly probable that he is dead.

We consider it necessary that he should improve his pronunciation.

He has made it clear that he will not give in.

that 从句一般不和介词宾语, 偶尔可作 except, in 的宾语。

eg. He is a good student except that he is a little bit careless.

He differed from his classmates in that he devoted his spare time to reading.

* 其他介词后面需要用 that 从句作宾语时, 必须用 it 作形式宾语。

eg. You may depend on it that I shall always help you.

3) 表语从句

that 引导表语从句不可省。

eg. My decision is that all of us are to start at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.

4) 同位语从句



that 引导同位语从句时, 应在某些抽象名词后, 如: fact, hope, desire,

thought, suggestion, idea, news, problem, possibility 等抽象名词后。

说明作用, that 在句中不作成分, 不可省。

eg. There's a feeling in me that we'll never know that what a UFO is not ever. that 作 feeling 的同位语, 绝不可省!

② whether / if (是否)

- 1) 表语从句, 同位语从句只用 whether, 不用 if;
- 主语从句置于句首时, 只用 whether, 不用 if;
- 作形式主语, 主语从句放在句末, whether / if 均可。
- discuss + whether 引导宾语从句。

eg. (Whether the meeting will be given) is still a problem. (主语从句在句首)
 = The problem is (whether the meeting will be given) (表语从句)
 = I have no idea (whether the meeting will be given) (同位语从句)

It is doubtful (whether / if he will come here) (主语从句在句末)

2) 宾语从句中

eg. I don't care whether he doesn't come. X whether 从句不能用否定
 I don't care whether / if he comes or not. ✓ whether / if ... or not
 I don't care whether or not he comes. ✓ whether or not
 I don't care if or not he comes. X 不放在 if or not
 I don't know whether to go there. ✓ whether to do

3) 介词后只用 whether, 不用 if.

eg. It depends on whether you can do the work well.



Tips: whether 与 if 在某些条件下可互换, 但在以下四种情况下, 只用 whether.
 不可用 if.

只用 whether

- whether or not *whether / if ... or not 是正确的。
- whether to do
- 名词性从句(主从句, 同从)
- 介词 + whether

③ 特殊疑问句

1) 主语从句: 常用 it 作形式主语。

eg. It makes no difference where we shall have the meeting.

It has not been decided yet who will preside over the meeting.

2) 表语从句

能接特殊疑问词引导的表语从句的动词(词组)很多, 常见的有: see, tell, ask, answer, know, decide, find out, imagine, suggest, doubt, wonder, show, discuss, understand, inform, advise 等。(Tip: 不必刻意记忆, 知道有此用法即可)

eg. ~~The problem is where we should stop.~~

I ~~don't~~ can't imagine how he did it.

They couldn't understand why I refused it.

表语从句, 同位语从句

eg. The problem is (where we should stop.) 表语从句

My question how I shall get in touch with him has not been answered. (同位语从句作介词的宾语)

eg. We are worrying about what we should do next.



④ 名词性关系从句

名词性关系从句其实是先行词与后面的表语从句的结合, 如:

what = the thing(s) which / that

what 用作前置定语: what help, what funny stories.

whoever = anyone who

whichever = anyone / anything that

whatever = anything that

where = the place where

when = the time when

1) 主语从句

eg. What they need is a good textbook.

whichever he likes will be given to him.

Whoever did this job must be rewarded.

2) 宾语从句

eg. She will give whoever (= anyone who) needs help a warm support.

She walked up to where (= the place where) he stood.

You can write about whatever topic (= any topic that) you prefer.

* I can judge by what (= the things that) I know of him.

3) 表语从句

eg. This is where our problem lies.

Tomorrow is when it would be most convenient.

4) 定语从句



eg. He has made the company what it is today. Tips: 多做题找感觉.

I'll call the baby whatever name you like. 把例句都背出来.

⑤ 10组易混点辨析

1) wh-ever 与 no matter wh- 的用法区别.

wh-ever 既可引导名词性从句 (前面刚讲过), 又可引导让步状语从句:

no matter wh- 只引导让步状语从句.

eg. Whatever I said, he ~~want's~~ wouldn't listen to me.

= No matter what I said, he wouldn't listen to me. (让步状从)

He would believe whatever I said. (原从)

* 在 whoever, whatever, whenever, wherever 中, -ever 起强调作用, 译为“无论, 到处”

eg. Wherever have you been? 你究竟在哪里?

2) as if / as though, because, why 也可引导表语从句

eg. It looked as if it was going to rain.

That's because he didn't work hard enough.

That was why I asked for three days' leave.

3) that 引导的同位语从句与表语从句的区别.

that 引导同位语从句: 置于抽象名词 (news, idea, fact, thought ...) 之后, 起对前面名词的补充说明作用, 不担当成分, 不可省。that 引导的同位语从句是完整的, 不缺成分。

eg. The news that (our football team won the match) was encouraging.

主句: The news was encouraging.

从句: our football team won the match 完整, 不缺成分

that 解释说明 news, 不作成分, 这是同位语从句.

that 引导表语从句, 在句中担当主语、宾语或表语, 因此, 从句是残缺的, that 作主语时不可省, 作宾语、表语可省.



eg. The news (that) we heard on the radio was not true.

主句: The news was not true.

从句: that we heard on the radio. 不完整, heard 缺少宾语, 此时 that 正是充当 heard 的宾语, 先行词 news, 因此, 这是定语从句.

2. 定语从句

① 限制性 & 非限制性定语从句

1) 两者的区别

限制性: 对先行词起修饰限制作用.

非限制性: 对先行词起补充说明作用, 往往有逗号隔开, 这是区分的一个重要标志.

2) 非限制性定语从句中关系代词和关系副词的用法

• 关系代词和关系副词在任何情况下都不能省略.

• who (主语), whom (宾语), which (宾语, 定语) 不能用 that 代替, 也不能互相代替.

• 在“介词 + which / whom 从句”结构中, 介词不能移到从句后面.

• when, where 只用于非限制性定语从句中.

② 关系代词的用法

关系代词有三个作用:
 连接: 连接主从句
 替代: 替代先行词
 成分: 在从句中充当成分

关系代词的用法分类



	限制性, 非限制性		限制性
	指人	指物	既指人, 又指物
主语	who	which	that
宾语	who(m)		
定语	whose / of ^{whom} her	whose / of which	whose

12 关系代词 that 和 which 的用法

★ 限制性定语从句中, 必须用 that 的情况: [重点, 必掌握]

先行词是不定代词 all, much, little, something, everything, anything, nothing, none, the one 等.

eg. You should hand in all that you have.

★ all that = what

Do you have anything that you want to say for yourself?

当先行词前面有 the only, the very (恰好, 正好), only, little, no 等词修饰

eg. This is the very bus that I'm waiting for.

The only thing that we can do is (to) give you some money.

当先行词是形容词最高级或先行词前有形容词最高级修饰时.

eg. This is the best that has been used against pollution.

This is the most interesting film that I've ever seen.

当先行词是序数词或前面有序数词修饰

eg. The train is the last that will go to Suzhou.

What is the first American film that you have seen?

当先行词既有人又有物时.

eg. Do you know (the things and persons) that they are talking about?

当主句的主语是疑问词 who/which



eg. Which is the bike that you lost?

Who is the boy that won the gold medal?

有两个定语从句时, 其中一个关系代词用 which, 另一个用 that.

eg. They secretly built up a small factory, which produced things that could cause pollution.

当先行词在主句中作表语, 而关系代词在从句中也作表语时.

eg. Shanghai is no longer the city that it used to be.

↓ 作 used to be 这个 be 的表语.

• 当先行词指物或前面整句话时, 定语从句必须用 which 的情况.

在非限制性定语中, 只用 which, 不用 that, 逗号后不可用 that.

eg. Helen was much kinder to her youngest son than to the others which, (of course) made the others envy him.

插入语, 不用管.

当动词短语中的介词提前时, 只用 which, 不用 that.

eg. This is the house in which Lu Xun once lived.

↓ 原本是 live in the house.

* 在一些固定搭配中, 动词介词不可分割, 不可把介词前置, 如:

This is the pen (which / that) I'm looking for.

不可前: This is the pen for which I'm looking.

2) 关系代词 who, whom, that 和 whose 的用法.

当先行词指人时: { 在定语从句中作主语, 用 who / that, 不可省.

{ 在定语从句中作宾语, 用 who / whom / that, 可省.

{ 在定语从句中作定语, 用 whose, 不可省.



* { who 可作主语宾语, whom 只可作宾语.
that -

eg. She is the girl who/that lives next door. (作主语)

That's the girl (whom/who/that) I teach. (作宾语, 可省)

This is the scientist whose achievements are well known. (作定语)

= the window of which broke last night.

= of which the window broke last night.

2) "介词+关系代词"引导定语从句.

*关系代词只指用 which (指物), whom (指人).

• 当介词在关系代词前, 只用 which/whom, 不可省.

eg. He paid the boy \$10 for washing ten windows, most of which hadn't been cleaned for at least a year.

• 在限制性定语从句中, 介词在从句末尾时, 可用 that/which (指物), that/who/whom (指人), 作介词的定语, 且作介词定语的关系代词可省.

eg. This is the hero

}	that
	who
	whom

 we are proud of.
(作宾语, 可省) 稿.

This is the pen

}	that
	which

 I wrote the letter with.
(作宾语, 可省) 稿.

• "复合介词短语+关系代词 which" 引导的定语从句, 从句结构常有逗号分隔, 并倒装.

eg. He lived in a big house, in front of which (stood a big tree.)
倒装



• "介词+which/whom+不定式"

eg. The poor man has no house in which to live.

= The poor man has no house to live in.

= The poor man has no house in which he can live.

4) as 引导的定语从句.

as 可引导限制性定语、非限制性定语; as 在从句中可作主语、宾语、表语.

• 引导限制性定语 (as 充当主语、宾语、表语)

such + n. + as ... (像...一样的)

the same + n. + as ... (和...同样的)

eg. We have found such machines as are used in their factory. (定语)

These houses are sold at such a low price as people expected. (定语)

He is not the same man as he was. (定语)

* 注意区分 such...as... 引导的定语从句和 such...that... 引导的状语从句.

eg. He is such a clever child as everyone likes. (定语从句表语)

He is such a clever child that everyone likes him. (状语从句表语)

5) 关系代词 as, which 的区别.

• 两者都可替代主句的整个内容, 而不是某个词.

* which 引导非限制性定语从句只能置于从句之后, as 可置于从句前后, 还可插入主句中.

eg. (As is known to all) the moon travels round the earth.

= The moon travels round the earth, which/as is known to all.



= (It is known to all that) the moon travels round the earth.

(What is known to all is that) the moon travels round the earth.

• 当非限制性定语从句或表语从句时只用 which.

eg. He came here very late, which was unexpected (not expected).

• as 在从句中作主语, 常用被动, 若从句中行为动词是主动语态, 一般用 which.

eg. She has been absent again, as is expected.

类似词还有 be known / said / reported / announced.

Tom has made rapid progress, which makes me very happy.

• as 常用在下列结构.

eg. as (it) seems likely, often happens, was pointed out

was said earlier

happens, appears

as I understand it / remember it

• 当非限制性定语从句中的宾语是一个复合结构时, 只用 which.

eg. Betty always tells a lie, which her parent find ^{which of find 取} strange. _{宾语}

② 关系副词的用法

1) 当先行词在定语从句中作状语时, 要用关系副词.

when = 表时间的介词 (at, in, during 等) + which

where = 表地点的介词 (in, at, on 等) + which

why = 表原因的介词 (for, 等) + which

eg. I still remember the day when I first came to Beijing.

Can you tell me the office where he works? (= in which)



Do you know the reason why he is absent? (= for which)

2) 介词 + which = where / when 有时还可以在 where / when 前加 from, to

eg. China is the birthplace of kites, from where kite flying spread to Japan, Korea, Thailand and India

3) where

需对 where 的考查趋于“地点模糊化”，不能只理解为表地点，当先行词表 situation 事情发展的 stage, 某事的某方面等都可 use where.

eg. That is where you are mistaken 那就是你的错误所在

Where will all this trouble lead. 这件麻烦事会带出什么结果?

They have reached the point where they have to separate with each other.

④ 关系代词与关系副词的比较.

关系代词: 在句中作主语、宾语、表语

关系副词: 作状语

判断法则: 若从句中缺主语、宾语、表语, 用关系代词; 那句子不完整.

若从句中缺状语, 用关系副词. 那句子必要成分已完整.

eg. Do you still remember the days that/which we spent ^{少状语} in Shanghai?

关系代词

Do you still remember the days when we spent the summer holidays in Shanghai?

关系副词 句子已完整, 缺时间状语

⑤ 定语从句中谓语动词的单复数形式

1) one of + 复数名词 + 关系代词 + V 复数形式



eg. Titanic is one of the most wonderful movies that have been produced in Hollywood.

2) the only one of + 复数名词 + 关系代词 + V单

eg. Titanic is the only one of the wonderful movies that has been produced in Hollywood.

* not the only one of ... = one of ...

3) as/which 引导的非限制性定语从句内容时, 若 as/which 作主语, 则从句谓语动词用单数.

eg. Great changes have taken place in China, as is known to all.

4) 先行词是 way (方式, 方法), 引导定语从句有下三种形式.

what surprised me was not what he said but the way $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{in which} \\ \text{that} \\ / \end{array} \right\}$ he said it.

* 注意 比较下面两个句子中的关系词, 它们是不同的.

• The way (that / which) he explained to us was quite simple.
作 explain 的宾语.

• The way (that / in which) (he explained the sentence to us) was not difficult to understand.

5) 先行词是 time 时, 若意为“次数”, 且在从句中作宾语, 用 that 可省.

若意为“一段时间”“时代”, 且在从句中作状语, 用 when

或 at which / during which.

eg. This is the second ^{次数} time (that) the President has visited the country.



This is was at a time ^{一段时间} when/during which there were no radios, no TV sets.

三. 例题讲解

1. Between the two parts of the concert is an interval, _____ the audience can buy ice-cream. (2011. 江苏)

A. when B. where C. that D. which

选 A. 句意: 音乐会两部分之间有休息时间, 那时观众可以买冰淇淋. 考查定语从句

先行词 an interval 指时间, 先行词在从句中作时间状语, 还原到句中为:

during the interval the audience can buy ice-cream.

2. The old town has narrow streets and small houses _____ are built close to each other. (2011. 山东)

A. they B. where C. what D. that

选 D. 句意: 这个古老的小镇拥有狭窄的街道和建造得很比靠近的小房子.

考查定语从句. 先行词是 small houses, 在从句中作主语, 因此用 that

A, C 不能引导定语从句, B 是关系副词, 不能做主语.

3. She showed the visitors around the museum, the construction _____ had taken more than three years. (2011. 江苏)

A. for which B. with which C. of which D. to which

选 C. 句意: 她带领游客参观了这个博物馆, 建设这个博物馆花了三年多的时间.

考查非限制性定语从句. 本句中无并列连词, 也无从属连词, 所以选 C 而非非限制性定

从. 先行词是 museum, 和 construction 之间是从属关系, the construction of the museum

4. Before a problem can be solved, it must be obvious _____ the problems itself is. (2011. 湖南)



A. what B. that C. which D. why

选 A. 句意: 在问题解决前, 必须弄清楚问题本身是什么. 考查名词性从句. 从句作形式主语, "it itself is" 是真正主语. 该从句缺主语, 故用 what 引导.

5. When the news came _____ the war broke out, he decided to serve in the army. (2011. 辽宁)

A. since B. which C. that D. because

选C. 句意: 当战争爆发的消息传来时, 他决定参军. 含有同位语从句.

"the war broke out" 作 the news 的同位语, 从句不缺成分, 用 that 引导.

6. It is not always easy for the public to see _____ use a new invention can be of to human life. (2011. 重庆)

A. whose B. what C. which D. that

选B. 句意: 让人们明白一项新发明对人类生活有什么用途并不是容易的. 考查名词性从句. 从句缺少定语, 变为陈述句是: A new invention can be of ^用 what use to human life. 本题易误选C. which 表"在某个范围内的选择", 意为"哪个", 本句没有范围限制, 故用 what.

7. He had his camera ready _____ he saw something that would make a good picture. (2011. 山东)

A. even if B. if only C. in case D. so that

选C. 句意: 他带着好了照相机, 以防看到他能够拍下来的好画面. 考查状语从句. A. 即使, 尽管 B. 要是...就好了 C. 以防, 万一 D. 为了.

8. No matter how _____, it is not necessarily lifeless. (2011. 辽宁)

A. a desert may be dry B. dry a desert may be

C. may a desert be dry D. dry may a desert be

选B. 句意: 无论沙漠可能会多么干燥, 那里也未必没有生命. 考查让步状语从句.

"no matter how + 形容词/副词 + 主语 + 谓语" 构成让步状语结构.



专题十一 特殊句式

一. 考纲解读

考点: 1. 倒装

2. 强调

3. 省略

4. 主谓一致

5. 反意疑问句

6. there be 句型

重点: 1. 把握各种特殊句式在具体语境中的运用

2. 掌握主谓一致的灵活运用.

高考考点: 倒装句4题, 其他2题.

二. 知识归纳

1. 倒装

① 全部倒装

* 单个动词 (run, runs, ran)

* 主语 (名词/词组)

1) 表语 + 系动词 + 主语

eg. Written on the blackboard are the names.

Between the two lakes stands a tall building.

2) there be 结构

eg. there stand / lie / exist /



3) here, there, now, then + 单个动词 + 主语 (名词/词组)

eg. Here comes the bus.

Here he comes.

4). "... .." said Tom. (去为/名词性词组)

"... .." he said.

"... .." sb said angrily / loudly / quickly

5). up, down, in, out ... (adv). 放在句首.

eg. In walked the teacher.

In she walked.

② 部分倒装

1) 表否定的单词/词组(句首) + be/助动词/情态动词 + sb.

eg. * No sooner had sb. done than 不倒装 (did)

Hardly when

* Not until + 时间状语从句 + be/助/情 + sb.

* It was not until ... that + 不倒装

2) Only + { 方式
时间状语从句 } + be/助/情 + sb.

eg. Only (in this way) can we work out the problem.

Only then did I realize

Only (when he studied in foreign countries) did he

Only he can work out the problem.

3) So (也) } + be/助/情 + 主语

Neither / Nor } → (也不)



eg. — He is thirteen but he doesn't like playing football.

is (the same) with sb. ⇒ 有两个谓语动词时作答用, 表“也”.

* { so + be/助/情 + 主语 : 也 (两个事物)
 { so + 主语 + be/助/情 : 的确 (同一个事物)

eg. — Tom is thirteen.

{ — So is she. 她也是13岁.
 { — So he is. 他的确是13岁.

4) often, many a time, well + be/助/情 + sb.

5) 虚拟动词 were / should / had + 主语 + ...

6) So + adj/adv } + be/助/情 + sb + ... that + 不倒.
 such + (a/an adj) n }

② 其它

1) the + 比较级, the + 比较级
 if 条件 主语

2) What + (a/an + adj) n } + (主语) !
 How + adj/adv

3) adj } + as / though + 主语 ...
 adv }
 名词 (无冠词)
 V (原形)



连接代词/副词 + ever { no matter how adj/adv + 主 + 谓
 no matter + 连接代词/状语从句 ...

1) May 表祝愿, 但愿

eg. May our friendship live forever.

2. 强调

① It is / was + 被强调部分 + that / who + 句子剩成分

* 强调人用 that / who, 强调物用 that.

* 所强调的可以是单词、短语, 也可以是从句, 但结构要完整.

* 被强调的成分是主语、宾语、状语, 但不能是定语或谓语.

eg. It is I who / that am right. (主语)

It was him who / that we met at the school gate. (宾语)

It was in the park that Tom lost his watch. (状语)

② 一般疑问句的强调句型: Is / Was it + 被强调部分 + that / who + 其他成分

eg. Was it in 1939 that the Second World War broke out?

Is it Professor Wang who teaches you English?

③ 特殊疑问句的强调句型: 特殊疑问词 + is / was + it + that + 其他成分.

eg. Who was it that broke the window?

When was it that you called me yesterday?

What is it that you want me to do?

④ 有时可用 It might be ... that ..., It must have been ... that ... 句型表强调.

eg. It might be his father that you're thinking of.

It must have been his brother that you saw.



⑤ not ... until ... 句型的强调句

→ It is / was not until + 被强调部分 + that + 其他成分.

eg. It was not until ten o'clock that he went to bed.

⑥ 强调句型中的 it 占作形式主语的 it 比较。

* 去掉 It is/was 和 that, 剩下成分仍能构成一个完整句子, 就是强调句, 否则就不是。

eg. It is there that accidents often happen.

→ Accidents often happen there. 事故经常在那里发生。

It is clear that not all boys like football

→ Clear not all boys like football. 不是完整句子, 因此这不是强调句。

⑦ 强调句型 It is/was ... that ...: It is/was + 时间 + when/before 从句:

& It is + 时间 + since 从句; It was not long ... before ... 等句型的区别。

eg. It was at midnight that I got back home yesterday.

昨天午夜我回到家了。(强调句)

It was midnight when/before I got back home yesterday.

当我昨天回到家时, 已经是午夜了。(非强调句)

It was two years ago that I began to learn English.

我是在两年前开始学英语的。(强调句)

It is two years since I began to learn English.

我学英语两年了。It is ... since ... 自从 ... 以来已有 ... (时间)

It ~~wasn't~~ wasn't long before ... 不久以后就 ... 了

It won't be long before ... 不久就会 ...

It was two years/days ... before ... 过了两年/两天就 ...

It will be two years/days before ... 还得两年/两天才 ...

It will not be two years/days before ... 用不了两年/两天就会 ...



试比较, It was two years before he came back from abroad.

It was two years later that he came back from abroad.

都表示: 他两年以后回国, 强调句中应注意状语的表达方式。

⑧ 对谓语动词的强调用 do / did / does.

eg. Do come this evening.

He did write to you last week.

3. 省略

1) 不定式的省略

① 在 be afraid, expect, forget, hope, intend, like, love, mean, prefer, refuse, seem, try, want, wish 等后面, 常用 to 代替被省略词。

eg. I asked him to see the film, but he didn't want to.

② 在 hope, have, need, ought, be going to, used 等后面, 用 to.

eg. I didn't want to go there, but I had to.

③ 在 glad, happy, pleased, delighted 等后面, 用 to.

eg. — Will you join in the game?

— I'd be glad to.

④ 否定形式的省略用 not to.

eg. — Shall I go instead of him?

— I prefer not to.



⑤ 如果不定式中含有 be, have, have been, 通常要保留 to be / to have / to have been

2) 状语从句中的省略.

① 当状语从句中主语和主句中主语一致,且从句中含be动词时,可省略从句中的主语和be动词. 此时从句中可出现下列情况

* 连词 (as, as if, once) + 名词

eg. Once (he was) a teacher, he now works in a government office.

* 连词 (though, whether, when) + 形容词

eg. Work hard when (you are) young, or you'll regret. 年轻时不努力, 老大徒伤悲!

* 连词 (whether, as if, while) + 介词短语

eg. He looked everywhere as if (he was) in search of something.

* * 连词 (when, while, though) + 现在分词

eg. While (I was) walking along the street, I heard my name called.

* * 连词 (when, if, even if, unless, once, ~~until~~, than, as) + 过去分词

eg. The exhibition is more interesting than (it was) expected.

* 连词 (as if, as though) + 不定式

eg. He opened his lips as if (he was) to speak. 好像要说话的样子

② 当从句主语是it, 谓语动词中含有系动词be时, 可以把it和be一起省略. 此时用了连词 (if, unless, when, whenever) + 形容词.

eg. Unless (it is) necessary, you'd better not refer to the dictionary.

③ 可以用so/not代替上述内容, 有"if + so/not"句式.



eg. Get up early tomorrow. If not (If you don't get up early), you will miss the first bus.

He may not be at home then. If so (If he is not at home), leave him a note.

Tips: 状语从句省略看似很多, 其实也就是归为名词(n), 形容词(adj), 介词短语(preposition), 现在分词(V-ing), 过去分词(V-ed), 不定式(to do)这几类, 跨词间基本相通, 重在多看多记, 主要查看V-ing, V-ed, to do 三种, 若有时态转换灵活, 容易做题。

4. 主谓一致

1) 并列主语的主谓一致

① 两个单数名词或不可数名词用and连接, 表两个不同概念, 谓语动词常用(原形)形式。

eg. Tom and Jack were close friends.

Steam and ice are different forms of water.

② 两个单数名词用and连接, 表同一人, 同一物或同一概念, 或表不可分割的整体, 谓语动词仍用(单数)形式。

eg. The singer and dancer (is) to attend our evening party.

那位歌舞演员 → 指同一人。

若说 The singer and the dancer 是指两个人, 用are.

③ 被every, each, many a, no等限定的单个主语用and连接时, 谓语动词仍用(单数)形式。其中后一个限定词可省略。

eg. Each boy and (each) girl has an apple.

Many a teacher and (many a) student has seen the film.

④ 一个单数名词被n个用and连接的并列形容词修饰时, 可以指一件事或几件事。



这种名词作主语时, 要根据意义一致的原则决定谓语动词的单复数形式。

eg. Simple and plain living is a fine quality. 生活简朴

(English and American) literature (are) appealing to her. 英国文学和美国文学

⑤ 由 and 连接的两个 what 从句作主语时, 要根据意义教的原则决定谓语动词的单复数形式。

eg. What he says and does do not agree. 他的言行不一致 (两件事)

What he says and does does not concern me. 他的言行与我无关。(一致)

⑥ 由 or, nor, either...or, neither...nor, not only...but (also) 连接的并列主语, 依据就近原则, 谓语动词单复数和邻近主语一致

eg. One or two friends are coming this evening.

Neither I nor he is in favor of her marriage.

Either you or I am going to be in charge of this matter.

⑦ ^{with} 名词 + which / along with / together with / as well as / rather than /

as much as / but / except 等 + 名词作主语时, 谓语动词单复数要与第一个名词一致。

eg. Tom (as well as two of his friends) was invited to the party.

Dr. Smith (together with his wife) is to arrive on the evening flight.

2) 数词与量词作主语时的主谓一致。

① 表时间、重量、距离、价格、体积等名词的复数作主语时, 作整体看待, 动词用单数。

eg. Twenty years is a long time in one's life.

② 分数修饰名词作主语时, 动词单复取决于意义。



eg. About one third of the books are worth reading.

A large percent of the work was done yesterday.

② 由 kind / form / type / sort / species / portion / series of 等修饰的主语, 动词单复取决于这些词的单复。

eg. This new type of buses is now on show.

All kinds of difficulties have to be overcome.

③ a number / variety / group of + n. + V复

the number / variety of + n. + V单

④ many a / more than one + 单数名词 + V单

eg. More than one student has failed the exam.

⑤ a quantity of { + 复数名词 + V复

{ + 不可数名词 + V单

quantities of + 复数名词 / 不可数名词 + V复

3) 某些名词作主语时的主谓一致

① 集体名词 family, class, crew, group, team, audience, committee, public 作主语, 动词单复数依主语所指意义而定

当把集体名词作集体来看, 用 V单; 作其中的各个成员看, 用 V复。

eg. The class consists of twenty-five boys and twenty girls.

The class are doing experiments.

② trousers, pants, jeans, compasses, glasses 作主语 + V复

+ 但若前面用了 a pair of / two (three) ... pairs of, 谓语动词与 pair 保持-



致。

eg. Here are some new pairs of shoes.

4) what 引导的从句作主语 + V.

eg. what he said leaves much for us to think about.

5. 反意疑问句

1). *must

① must 表必须 → needn't

mustn't 表禁止 → must/may

eg. You must go now, needn't you?

You mustn't smoke here, must/may you?

② must 表推测, 作“一定是”, may/might 表“可能”, 可先把句子改成 “I am sure/guess that 从句”. 反意疑问句部分依 be sure/guess 后宾语从句的谓语动词形式而确定.

eg. You must/may (might) be hungry now, aren't you?

可改为: I am sure/guess you are hungry now, aren't you?

You must have heard about it, haven't you?

可改为: I am sure that you have heard about it, haven't you?

You must have watched that football match last night, didn't you?

可改为: I am sure that you watched that football match last night, didn't you?

表过去的时间状语.

Tips: must 的反意疑问句是重点也是难点, 在表推测时, 尤其要注意时态, 一般有明确表现在, 过去, 将来的时间的状语可以确定, 若无明确时间, 则考虑完成时态.



2) used to

反意疑问句部分用 usedn't / didn't

3) ought to

反意疑问句部分用 oughtn't / shouldn't

4) 否定词或半否定词.

seldom, hardly, scarcely, never, few, little, nothing, nobody 词.

反意疑问句部分用肯定形式

eg. He could hardly walk without a stick, could he?

5) *宾语从句

① 陈述部分主句是 think, believe, suppose, guess, expect, imagine, be sure 等且主语为第一人称. 疑问部分主语和时态与宾语从句主语时态一致.

eg. I don't believe he will succeed, will he?

Tips: 由于前面已有 don't 表否定, 因此后面用肯定的 will 与 he?

② 其他情况下, 疑问部分主语与助动词和主句一致.

eg. Tom doesn't believe Jane will succeed, does he?

He said that he would come to my birthday party, didn't he?

6) "否定" 意义前缀, 反意疑问句部分用否定式



eg. It's unfair, isn't it?

Tom dislikes playing tennis, doesn't he?

7) 祈使句的反意疑问句.

① 否定, will you?

② 肯定, will / won't you?

③ Let's ..., shall we?

④ Let us ..., will / won't you?

⑤ Let + 第三人称 ..., will you?

* 8) 回答反意疑问句时, 不管主句为否定, 还是附加句为否定, 回答时只看所提到的事是否已发生. 若发生, 用肯定, 若未发生, 用否定.

eg. You aren't a student, are you?

You are a student, aren't you?

两种问法是一致的, 若你是学生, 回答, Yes, I am. 否则, No, I am not.

* 不存在 Yes, I don't. / No, I do 的形式, 要么肯定到底, 要么否定到底.

9) 附加问句主语和陈述部分主语在人称、数上保持一致的几种情况.

陈述部分主语	附加问句主语	例句
one (指人)	one 或 he	One can't be careful enough. can he/one? 再小心也不为过, 是吗?
this, that, these, those	it 或 they	This isn't a fast train. is it? 这不是列快车, 对吗?
everything, anything, something, nothing	it	Nothing happened to him. did it? 他没发生什么事, 是吗?
everyone, everybody, someone, somebody, no one, nobody, anyone, anybody	he 或 they (更常见)	Nobody likes to be laughed at, does he//do they? 没人愿意被嘲笑, 是吗?
不定式、动名词、其他短语	it	Learning English well will take us a lot of time. doesn't it? 学好英语将要花费我们很多时间, 对吗?
there be 句型	there	There will be rain tomorrow. won't there? 明天要下雨, 是吗? There should be no problem. should there? 应该没什么问题, 是吗?

6. there be 句型

① there be 结构符合就近原则.

eg. There is a pen, two books, and many pencils on the desk.

② there be 有各种时态

there was / will be / have been / can't be ...

③ there be 中的 be 有时可用 seem to be, happen to be, is likely to be 或单系动词 remain, stand, lie, go, exist, follow, live, come, occur 替换.

eg. There is likely to be something wrong with his computer.

④ there be 句型的非谓语形式:

eg. I never dreamed of there being a picture on the wall.

I expect there to be many chances for him to get a job.

It is natural for there to be a generation gap between them.

← There being not enough time left, we have to hurry. 独立主格

Because there is not enough time left, ...

There having been no water for 2 days, the travelers were all thirsty. → 独立主格



三. 例题讲解.

1. — Have you seen the film Under the Hawthorn Tree?

— Of course, I have. It was in our village — it was made.

A. that B. where C. when D. which (2011. 重庆)

选A. 句意“你看过电影《山楂树之恋》吗？”“当然，我看过。它就是在我们村里拍摄的。”

强调结构: It is/was + 被强调部分 + that + 句余部分.

2. Only when he reached the tea-house — it was the same place he'd been in last year. (2011. 新课标全国)

A. he realized B. he did realize
C. realized he D. did he realize

选D. 句意“只有到了茶馆时，他才意识到这是他在年来过的同一个地方。”

only + 副词/介词短语/状语从句置于句首时，句首(主句)要用部分倒装语序.

3. John opened the door. There — he had never seen before. (2012. 陕西)

A. a girl did stand B. a girl stood
C. did a girl stand D. stood a girl

选D. 以 here, there, up, down 开头且主语为名词的句子通常用全部倒装语序.

4. Some of you may have finished Unit One. —, you can go on to Unit Two. (2012. 江西)

A. If you may B. If you do
C. If not D. If so



选D. 句意: 你们当中可能有些人已经结束了第一单元, 如果这样的话你们可以继续完成第二单元. so代替前句表示的肯定情况, 而 not 代替前句表示的否定情况.

5. These trees must have been planted three years ago, _____.

A. weren't they

B. mustn't they (2009, 苏州)

C. didn't they

D. haven't they

选A. 首先, trees 是被种植的, 是被动语态, 排除C.

其次, three years ago, 表过去, 是过去时, 排除D.

must 表推测, 排除B.

可能为: I am sure that these trees were planted three years ago, _____?

6. Not a single word _____ when he left home and joined the army in 1941.

A. did he leave

B. left he

C. did leave he

D. he left

选A. 部分倒装, 助动词提前

7. One-third of the country _____ covered with trees and the majority of the citizens _____ black people. (2011, 湖南)

A. is; are

B. is; is

C. are; are

D. are; is

选A. 第一个空分数修饰的名词 country 是集体名词, 作集体讲, 用单数.

第二个空修饰 citizens, 市民中的成员, 用复数.



专题十二 情景交际

一. 考纲解读

考点: 1. 社会交往 2. 态度 3. 情感 4. 时间 5. 原因 6. 存在

7. 特征 8. 计量 9. 比较 10. 逻辑关系 11. 职业.

重点: 1. 熟记并能恰当使用常见情景交际用语.

2. 了解英语中常用俗语、谚语并能具体语境中恰到好处运用

高考考点分布: 社会交往 2 题, 态度 5 题, 情感及其他 1 题.

二. 知识归纳

1. 社会交往 (Social Communications)

① 问候 (Greetings)

双方初次见面: How do you do?

熟人见面: Hello! / Hi! / Good morning / afternoon / evening.

熟人询问身体: — How are you?

— Very well. / Fine, thank you, and you?

请代我向...问好: Please give my love / regards / best wishes to ...

询问近况: What's new with you? / Anything new?

② 介绍 (Introductions)

My name is Jim.

I'm a student.

I'm from Britain.

Excuse me. What's your (full) name, please?

This is Mr / Mrs / Miss / Ms Brown.



I have ~~often~~ often wanted to meet you.

May I introduce you to ...?

I'd like you to meet ...

Excuse my introducing myself.

Nice / Glad / Pleased to meet / see you.

{ Nice meeting you, Mr/Mrs/Miss Brown. } 多用于分手时,且应答者在
{ Nice to have seen you. } 回来加句.

③ 告别 (farewells)

Good bye / Bye / Bye-bye 再见。

— Good night. 晚安。

See you later / then / tomorrow / soon.

— 回头见/明天见/待会见。

I am sorry I have to go now.

— 对不起,我现在得走了。

I am afraid I must be leaving / must be off / have to go now.

— 恐怕现在我得走了。

I think it's time for us to leave now.

— 我想现在我们该走了。

Well, I must be off. Good-bye.

— 好了,我得走了,再见。

It's time I met Tom. I have to go now.

— 我该去见汤姆了。现在我得走了。

* 听到对方善意的话语或见到对方的友好行为。

— It's very kind / nice of you to ...

— Thank you very much.

应答时说 — Not at all. / Don't mention it.

④ 感谢 (Thanks)

— Thank you very much. (非常) 感谢。

Thanks a lot. 多谢。

— Many thanks. 多谢。

Thanks / Thank you for listening. 谢谢收听。

— Thank you for your help. 谢谢你的帮助。

It's very kind / nice of you. 你真是太好了。

— Not at all. 不用谢。/ 不客气。

You are welcome. 不用谢。

My pleasure. 很荣幸 (为您效力)。

— That's OK / all right. 没关系。

Don't mention it. 别提这事了 (不客气)。

I'm very glad you enjoy it. 我很高兴你喜欢它。

— No trouble at all. 一点儿也不麻烦。

* 对于别人的感谢, 应答时可说:

— You're welcome. / It's a pleasure

— My pleasure.

Tip with pleasure = ok / sure / certainly

* 借别人东西归还时可说:

— Thank you for your ...

应答可用 — You're welcome. / Not at all.

— That's all right. / Ok / Don't mention it.

⑤ 道歉 (Apologies)

I am sorry. 对不起。

Pardon. 请原谅。(应读降调。若读升调, 表示因没听清对方的话而希望对方重复)

Excuse me, please. 请原谅我。

I beg your pardon. 我请求您的原谅。

I am sorry for losing your book. 很抱歉弄丢了你的书。

I am sorry to interrupt you. 很抱歉打断你。

Please forgive me for being late. 请原谅我迟到了。

I do apologize for the inconvenience I brought to you last night. 对于昨晚带给你的不便, 我感到非常抱歉。

I've got to say sorry for what I said rudely just now.

我对刚才对你说的无礼的话感到很抱歉。

It was me to blame. 这是我的错。

That's OK. 没关系。

That's all right. 没关系。

It doesn't matter. 不要紧。

That's nothing. 没什么。

Never mind. 没关系。

Forget it. 忘了这件事。

Don't worry about that. 不要为那件事感到不安。

It really isn't worth mentioning.

那真是不值得一提。

*向陌生人询问情况时用:

— Excuse me, but ...?

回答依据情况而定。

⑥ 邀请 (Invitations)

Would you like to go for a walk?

May I invite you to dinner?

What / How about having a swim?

Shall we have a drink?

Yes, I'd love to.

No, thank you.

I'd like that, thanks.

*用试探性/商量口气邀请对方 — Would you like ...?

正式有礼貌的邀请 — I'd like to / — May I invite you to ...?



委婉邀请 — How / What about ...?

若接受 — Yes, I'd love to ... / It's very kind of you.

若拒绝 — I'd love to, but ... / I wish I would, but ... / I'm sorry I can't.

⑦ 请求允许 (Asking for permission)

May I use your bike?

I wonder if I could use your bike?

Do you mind if I open the window?

Would you mind my smoking here / if I smoke here?

Will you let me check in now?

Will you allow me to park here?

Would it be all right if I sit here?

* 对 mind 句式回答常用 Not at all. / Of course not. / No, please. 表“不介意, 不反对”, 用 I'm sorry you can't. / I'm sorry, but it's not allowed. / Yes, please don't. 表“介意, 反对”。

⑧ 祝愿和祝贺 (Wishes and congratulations)

Have a good day / time!

Good luck!

Enjoy yourself.

Best wishes to you. (写信末尾常用, 贺卡中常用)

Wish you all the success! 祝你们成功

Every success in your study! 祝你学业有成

All the best with your family.

Congratulation on winning the football game.

Please send him my congratulations.



* 对于祝愿常用 Thank you 回答。

若双方皆进行同一事情, 则: The same to you. / You too.

⑨ 提供帮助 (Offering help)

Can/Could I help you? → 服务性强

Would you like me to help you with your lesson?

Is there anything (else) I can do for you?

What can I do for you? → 服务性强

Would you like some tea?

Let me do it for you.

* 对别人愿意提供各种帮助的回答。

That would be fine/nice.

That's very kind of you.

I'm afraid I can't, but thank you just the same.

I can manage it myself.

Thank you all the same. 还是要谢谢你。

* 若对方请你吃东西, 吃饱了不想吃就说: No thanks, I'm full.

⑩ 约会 (Making appointments)

A. Will you be free tomorrow?

When/Where shall we meet?

I'd like to make an appointment with Jones.

What time is convenient for you?

B. Ok, I'll be free then.

All right. See you then.

Any time is all right.



I'm afraid I have no time then.

Let's make it 8 o'clock.

⑩打电话 (Making telephone calls)

- Hello! May I speak to Tom?
你好,我可以同汤姆说话吗?
- Is that Liu Ying (speaking)? 你是刘英吗?
I'll ring him / her up again. 我会再给他打电话的。
- Hello! Who is that? 你好,你是哪位?
Hold the line / Hold on, please. 请别挂电话。
Can you put me through to 342827?
— 给我接 342827 可以吗?
Central! You've cut me off.
— 总机! 你把我的电话切断了。
Connect me with Room 201, please.
— 请给我接 201 房间。
Extension 422, please. 请接 422 分机。
— Hello, operator, you gave me the wrong number.
— 喂,接线员,你给我的电话号码不对。
Put me through to extension 231, please.
— 请给我接 231 分机。
A minute, please. I'll connect you / put you through.
— 请稍等片刻。我会给你接通电话。
Just a minute. I'll get the number for you.
— 等一下。我给你接这个电话号码。
Number, please. 请报电话号码。
One moment. I'll switch you over.
— 等一下,我给你转过去。
The line is busy / engaged. 电话占线。
— The line's through now. 电话现在接通了。

⑪就医 (Seeing the doctors)

- I'm not quite myself. 我不舒服。
I've got a pain here. 我这儿疼。
- I don't feel like eating. 我不想吃饭。
It's nothing serious. 不要紧。
Take it easy. 别着急。
You'll be all right/well soon. 你很快就会好的。
Take this medicine three times a day.
— 一天吃三次这种药。
What's wrong (the matter/the trouble) with you?
— 你哪儿不舒服?
I seem to have caught a cold. 我似乎感冒了。
— What hurts/is troubling you? 你哪儿不舒服?
I have got something wrong with my stomach and I don't feel like eating.
— 我肚子有点儿不舒服,而且我不想吃饭。
What's your trouble? 你哪儿不舒服?
— I'm running a temperature and I have a headache.
我在发烧而且头痛。
— When did the pain start? 什么时候开始痛的?
Three days ago. 3 天前。
— How long has this been going on?
这种症状有多久了?
Two or three days. 两三天了。
— Do you have a history of heart trouble?
你有心脏病史吗?
No, I don't. 不,我没有。

⑫就餐 (Having meals)

- Can I take your order now?
现在可以请您点菜了吗?
- Do you want anything to start with?
您想开始先来点什么吗?
- Would you like something to drink/eat?
您要喝/吃点什么吗?
- What would you like? 您想要点什么?
— Could we see the menu, please?
请给我们看看菜单好吗?
- Do you have all types of seafood here?
你们这儿各种海味都有吗?
- What's special for tonight?
今晚有什么特色菜?
- A table for four, please.
— 请安排一张供 4 个人用餐的桌子。
- I prefer the one in the quiet corner.
我更喜欢在安静角落里的那个位置。
- Is the table free, waiter?
服务员,这张桌子空着吗?
- No, it's too close to the door.
不行,这个离门太近了。
- Thank you, we'll take it.
谢谢你,我们就坐这儿。
- Help yourself to some fish.
请随便吃些鱼。
- Which do you prefer, rice or noodles?
你更喜欢哪个,米饭还是面条?
- What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?
你想喝点什么,茶还是咖啡?
- No, thank you. I've had enough. 不,谢谢。我饱了。



④购物 (Shopping)

— I need to buy some food. When will the supermarket close? 我得去买点儿食物。超市什么时候关门?

— It opens around the clock. 24 小时营业。

Anything I can do for you. 你想买什么?

Are you looking for some chocolate?

你想买些巧克力吗?

Can I help you in any way? 你想买什么东西吗?

Good morning, sir. Can I help you?

早安, 先生。买东西吗?

What can I do for you? 您想买什么?

I want/ I'd like a pair of shoes. 我想买双鞋。

Bring me a large size, please.

请给我拿尺寸大一点儿的。

I prefer a different color. 我想要其他颜色的。

Can I get you anything else? 还要买别的什么吗?

What can I show you? 您要买什么?

What kind would you like? 您想买什么样的?

What material do you prefer? 您喜欢什么料子的?

What size/color do you want? 您要什么尺寸/颜色的?

May I try it on? 我可以试穿一下吗?

Sorry, it's too expensive. 对不起, 太贵了。

That's fine. I'll take it. 好的, 我买了。

Just have a look. 只是随便看看。

Well, I'll think about it. 嗯, 我会考虑的。

Here's your change. 这是找给你的零钱。

⑤问路 (Asking the way)

Excuse me. Where's the washroom?

请问, 卫生间在哪儿?

Can you tell me how to get to the post office?

您能告诉我怎么去邮局吗?

Excuse me. Which bus goes to the World Park?

请问哪路公共汽车去世界公园?

Can I go by bus? 我可以乘坐公共汽车去吗?

Turn right/left at the first/second crossing/corner.

在第一/第二个路口/拐角处往右/左拐。

Does this road lead to...? 这条路通往.....吗?

Excuse me. Which is the way to...?

请问去.....走哪条路?

How can I get to...? 怎么去.....?

You'd better take a taxi. 你最好打出租车。

You can take Bus No. 103. 你可以乘 103 路公交车。

Go down this street until you see the tall red building.

沿这条街走一直走到你看到那座高高的红色大楼。

It's in that direction. 在那个方向上。

⑥谈论天气 (Talking about weather)

— How's the weather in Beijing?

北京的天气怎么样?

— What a cold/hot day today!

今天多冷/热啊!

— What's the temperature today?

今天的气温是多少?

— Does it rain very often here?

这儿经常下雨吗?

— Is it always as hot as this?

天气总是这么热吗?

— What's the weather going to be like at the weekend?

— 周末的天气将会怎么样?

It's going to be sunny and dry for the next two days.

未来两天的天气将会是晴朗和干燥的。

It's clearing up. 天放晴了。

⑦语言交际困难 (Language difficulties in communication)

Pardon? 请再说一遍好吗? (用升调)

I beg your pardon? 请再说一遍好吗?

— Would you please say that again/more slowly?

请再说一遍/说慢一点儿好吗?

— Could you repeat that, please? 请你重复一遍好吗?

I'm sorry I can't follow you. 抱歉, 我没听清楚。

I'm sorry I know only a little English.

抱歉, 我只会一点儿英语。

How do you say the word in English?

— 这个词用英语怎么说?

I'm afraid I didn't quite hear that/what you said.

我恐怕没听见 (没听清你说的话)

— What do you mean by...? 你说.....是什么意思?

I don't know how to say that in English.

我不知道用英语怎么表达。

⑧提醒 (Reminding)

You'd better go to the doctor.

You need to buy a Chinese-English dictionary.

Don't hurry.

Please stand in line. 请排队

I suggest that he (should) start at once.

Remember to lock the door.

Make sure that all the windows are closed.

Mind your head! 小心头

Watch floor! 小心地滑

⑨警告和禁止 (Warnings and prohibitions)

You'd better not do it.

If you are late again, you'll be punished.

If you ... you will ... 此结构对熟人是缓和制止, 对生人是威胁。

Be careful! (Take care!) (Look out!) 当心! (小心!)

Behave yourself! 规矩点!

Don't try tricks! 别耍花招!

Leave the dog alone! (Leave it alone!)

Watch out! (Watch out for pickpockets!) 留神! (当心扒手!)

You stay out of this! 你别参与此事!

* No + n. doing 表禁止, 后加 please 则语气缓和; 用于标语表“严禁”。

Watch out! / Look out! 紧急情况下发出的警告。

Take care! Be careful! 一般情况的警告, 可加 + n. / not to do.



② 劝告 (Advice)

Do you think I can take it?

How do you think I should change the timetable?

I'd like your advice about my research.

I don't think you should keep silent.

It wouldn't do for you to go to law against him.

③ 建议 (Suggestions)

If I were you, I'd phone him now.

Shall we go now?

What / How about a picnic this Sunday?

Why don't you buy a computer?

Why not go to a movie?

You'd better go out for a walk.

I don't feel like going out.

I'd prefer to go swimming.

It would be better to 会更好。

* 表建议时, shall 用于第一和第三人称, will 用于第二人称。

表建议时, suggest 后用虚拟语气, (should +) V原。

2. 态度 (Attitudes)

① 同意和不同意 (Agreement and disagreement)

Certainly. (Sure. / of course)

No problem.



I couldn't agree more.

I suppose so.

I quite agree with you.

That's my feeling, too.

I agree on the whole, but things are not so easy.

No way.

I'm afraid I don't agree.

Well, it depends.

② 喜欢和不喜欢 (Likes and dislikes)

I like / love English very much.

I'm very keen on outdoor sports.

I've taken a fancy to hot dogs.

I hate to do homework.

③ 肯定和不确定 (Certainty and uncertainty)

I'm certain (that) you'll pass the exam.

I've no doubt of your ability.

I can't tell where it was lost.

It's hard to tell.

I have no idea where I'm going this summer.

* certain 与 sure 可互换, 但 It is certain that ... 不能用 sure.

doubt 用于肯定句, 用 whether 引导, 用于否定句/疑问句中, 用 that 引导
表可能性大小的排序.

Certainly > absolutely > necessarily > probably > perhaps > maybe



> possibly > never

④可能和不可能 (Possibility and Impossibility)

He can/may come.

It's possible that he will be here in time.

He is not likely (He is unlikely) to come.

* likely 可用人或物作主语, 也可用作形容词, 而 possible, probable 只能用它。

⑤能够和不能够 (Ability and Inability)

I'll be able to get to done by Sunday.

I think I can solve the problem.

Playing bridge isn't too difficult to me.

⑥偏爱和爱好 (Preference and hobbies)

I'd prefer to have a drink, if possible.

I prefer walking to cycling.

I'd rather walk than take a bus.

⑦意愿和打算 (Intentions and plans)

I'm going to start next week.

I'll do it myself.

I intend to forgive him.

I'm thinking of driving to Beijing.

* be going to 表示将要发生的意图和打算, 若未事先告知, 用 I will ...



天上即将下雨, 表示天气情况, 也用 be going to, 有征兆的。

④ 希望和愿望 (Hopes and wishes)

* wish, want, expect 在过去完成时表示一种过去未能完成或实现的愿望。

We had expected to be consulted at the very least.

* If only 多用虚拟, 但愿...就好了。

* I wish to see you again.

I were a bird.

I hope to become a doctor.

It stays fine.

I hope so / not.

⑤ 表扬和鼓励 (Praise and encouragement) ⑥ 责备和抱怨 (Blame and complaint)

A good try. 一次很好的尝试。

All right. 行。

Any volunteers? 有自告奋勇者吗?

Anyone likes to add anything? 有人补充吗?

Be bold and speak up. 大胆地说吧。

Be brave. 勇敢一点儿。

Come on, who'd like to have a try? 来, 谁想试一下?

Just try. 试试看。

No problem. 没问题。

Don't give up hope. 不要放弃希望。

Don't let this get you down.

不要为此灰心丧气。

That's better than I could do.

这比我能办的要好。

Try to look on the bright side of things.

尽量从好的方面看吧。

You can do it! 你能行!

You speak English very well. 你英语说得很好。

Cheer up! 振作一点!

I'm not at all satisfied.

我一点儿也不满意。

He is to blame. 他应该受到责备。

She blamed him for the failure of their marriage. (She

blamed the failure of their marriage on him.)

她把他们婚姻的失败归咎于他。

He shouldn't have done that.

他本不该做那件事。

I'm sorry to have said that, but you were too careless.

很抱歉我讲了那些话, 但你也太粗心大意了。

Why can't you do something about it?

对这件事你干吗不做点什么呢?

Can't you be a bit more careful with my bike?

你骑我的自行车就不能更小心点儿吗?

I'm really very annoyed about it.

我对此事真的很生气。

Would you mind not spitting everywhere?

不要随地吐痰行吗?

Do you have to slam the door?

难道你一定得把门关得那么响吗?

I hate to have to say this, but it's too noisy here.

我不想说, 但是这儿太吵了。



① 冷淡 (Indifference)

I don't care. (what you do).

It doesn't matter to me.

√ It's none of my business. 这不是我事。

√ It make no difference to me. 这对我来说无所谓。

② 判断与评价 (Judgement and evaluation)

Well done! / Good work!

I beg to differ with you.

I don't quite agree with you. I'm against it.

Many people have different ideas.

3. 情感 (Emotions)

① 高兴 (Happiness)

How wonderful! / nice!

I'm really delighted about your success.

② 惊奇 (Surprise)

My goodness! / Good heavens! 天哪!

Oh, that's incredible! 哦, 那简直不可思议!

③ 忧虑 (Worries)

I find the situation very worrying.

You frightened me to death, staying out all night.



I fear (that) he may have lost his way.

④ 安慰 (Reassurance)

It's not as bad as all that.

There is not point in worrying about it.

You mustn't upset yourself.

⑤ 满意 (Satisfaction)

That's good enough.

⑥ 遗憾 (Regret)

What a shame! / pity!

⑦ 同情 (Sympathy)

I do feel sorry for him. 我为他难过!

⑧ 恐惧 (Fear)

It makes my hair stand on end. 这让我毛骨悚然.

⑨ 愤怒 (Anger)

Damn! Isn't it annoying! 该死! 真气人!

That's the limit! 真是忍无可忍了!

4. 时间和空间 (Time and space)

① 时刻 (Point of time)

Have you got the time? / Do you have the time?



What does your watch say? / What's the time by your watch?

It's about to strike twelve. 差不多快12点了.

② 时段 (Duration)

How long have you been in school?

How much time will it take to walk there?

Three years, more or less. 三年左右。

③ 频率 (Frequency)

How often ...?

④ 顺序 (Sequence)

The car ran here and there, first on this side, then on that side.

⑤ 位置 (Position)

— Where is the classroom?

— It lies about two miles east of the city center.

⑥ 方向 (Direction)

to the east of China

⑦ 距离 (Distance)

How far ...?

⑧ 存在与不存在 (Existence and non-existence)

Does water exist on the moon?



5. 特征及其他 (Features and others)

1. 形状 (Shape)

A: What does it look like?

What's the shape of the clouds?

B: It's round/long/tall.

It's a circle, measuring 5 meters from every round.

2. 颜色 (Color)

It's light brown/dark purple.

I like the photo in black and white.

The hairstyle suits all girls of your age.

3. 材料 (Material)

A: What's the table made of?

What's the red wine made from?

B: It's made of wood.

It's made from grapes.

I bought a woolen sweater yesterday.

4. 价格 (Price)

How much is the dictionary?

The dictionary costs me 59 yuan, and it is well worth it.

5. 规格 (Size)

What size is your sweater?

What size shoes do you wear?

The size of my sweater is M.

It's too big/tight for me. It doesn't fit me.

6. 年龄 (Age)

How old is she?

She is already in her forties, but she looks younger.

7. 计量 (Measurement)

How long/wide/deep... is the river?

It's some 900 kilometers in length/long.

— I drink five glasses of water every day.

8. 原因和结果 (Causes and effects)

— A: Why are you late for school?

How could you miss the train?

— B: Because I got up late.

As he was ill, he couldn't come to school.

— Since she did not feel well, she stayed at home.

— Because of the bad traffic, we missed the train.

— Due to the heavy fog, the planes were delayed.

— The reason is that he is not careful enough in his work.

He ate too much, so he did not feel well.

— It is so dark that I cannot see anything in the room.

9. 目的 (Purpose)

— A: Why are you here today?

Why did you talk to your father like that?

— What for?

— B: I came here to see you off.

I did that in order to protect the trees from being cut down.

— 10. 职业 (Occupation)

A: Why are you going to be when you grow up?

— What company are you working for/with?

B: I'm teaching English in a high school.

Tips: 情景交际题是每年高考都会出的题目, 通常难度不会太高, 重在理解, 理解看题目中对话所讲的主题, 语气等, 加上对常用回答的熟悉, 就没有多大问题了。虽然在本专题中列举了诸多句子, 浩浩荡荡, 不过大家只要把自己尚不理解的语句多看两眼即可, 已理解的大可抛之脑后!

如 Take care, never mind, take it easy, no problem 等常用连词的含义用法要多上点心!



三. 例题讲解.

1. — Did you forget about my birthday?

— _____ I've booked a table at Michel's restaurant for this evening. (2011. 大纲全国)

A. What then? B. I'm afraid so C. How could I? D. For sure.

选C. 句意“你忘记我的生日吗?”“我怎么能忘记呢?我已经在米歇尔餐馆为今晚预订了一张桌子。”

A. (吓)怎么办? B. 恐怕是这样的. C. 我怎么能呢? D. 肯定

2. — Do you have Mary's phone number?

— Sorry, _____ (2011. 重庆)

A. I don't know B. forget it C. here you are D. I can't remember it.

选D. 句意“你有玛丽的电话号码吗?”“对不起,我想不起来。”

A. 我不知道 B. 不必在意 C. 给你 D. 我想不起来.

此题A是干扰项. 语法上看A, D都正确. 该题出的不好, 一般江苏高考不会这样.

3. — I'm sorry I didn't finish it on time.

— _____ (2011. 四川)

A. Fine, thanks B. No, thanks C. Thanks a lot D. Thanks anyway

选D. 句意: 很抱歉, 我没有按时完成. 不管怎样还是要谢谢你对.

A. 很好, 谢谢 B. 不, 谢谢 C. 多谢 D. 不管怎样还是要谢谢你对.

4. — You could always put the decision off a little bit longer.

— _____ If I leave it much longer I might miss my chance.



A. That's reasonable advice.

(2011. 江苏)

B. Isn't it a good idea?

C. Do you think so?

D. I can't agree more.

选C. 句意 "你把决定向后推迟一点点总是可以的。" "你认为是这样吗? 如果我迟迟不做决定, 我可能会失去机会的。" 显然C正确。

5. — I don't think I'll be able to go mountain-climbing tomorrow.

(2011. 浙江)

— _____?

A. And how B. How come C. How's it going D. How about it

选B. 同意 "我认为我们明天不会去爬山。" "怎么会呢?"

How come 是固定句式, 表 "怎么会呢?"



第二部分 高考题型讲解

专题一 听力

一. 大纲完全解读

1. 题型介绍

听力部分测试考生获取口头信息的能力。听力部分一共20分,其中短对话占5分,长对话或独白占15分。考试参考时间约20min。

短对话一共有5段,每段对话后有一个小题,听原声段对话后有10秒回答问题并阅读下一个小题,每段对话仅读一遍。

长对话或独白共有5段,每段后有2-3个小题,每段前有时间阅读各个小题,每小题5秒钟;听完后,各小题给出5秒钟作答时间,每段长对话或独白读两遍。

二. 考核要求

听力部分考核考生获取口头信息的能力,主要包括捕捉主要细节,确认具体事实;推测谈话背景,确认角色关系;领悟主旨大意,概括话题内容;理解说话者的意图、观点和态度等。听力部分考核的技能是:

1. 理解中心思想和重要细节

1) 理解中心思想

2) 听懂重要的或特殊的细节

3) 判断说话人的观点、态度等

2. 理解隐含的意思

4) 推断隐含的意义

5) 判断话语的实际功能



3. 借助语言特征理解听力材料

6) 理解句间关系,如比较、原因、结果、程度、目的等。

二. 考题分析与高分技巧

1. 短对话

通常是一男一女对话, 对话涉及内容广泛, 但通常都是日常生活中的话题, 即衣、食、住、行、工作、学习等与学生息息相关的话题。对话中的问题往往涉及以下几个方面: 人物的观点、感情、态度、评论、建议; 人物的关系或身份; 事情发生的时间、地点及因果关系; 主旨大意; 日期、数字的推算; 事物的特征、内容等。

1. 观点态度题

命题规律:

1) 这类题的选项一般为完整的句子, 大多含有 think, should, agree, disagree, opinion, like, dislike, will 等词。

2) 有时, 说话人的观点、态度会在对话中直接表明; 但在大多数情况下, 不会直接表明, 需要考生从说话人的语调、语气及所用词汇词语进行判断。

2) 常见提问方式:

- What did the woman/man say I feel about?
- What's the woman's/man's attitude towards/opinion about?
- What did the woman/man think of?
- What does the woman/man mean/imply?
- What does the woman/man think the man/woman should do?

高分技巧

1) 在选项中出现 disagree/agree with, share... opinion, like, dislike 等, 可初步判定该题问的是第二个人是否同意第一个人的观点, 这时, 要重点听第二个人说话, 尤其是言外之意。



2) 注意说话者的语气和语调, 领会言外之意

掌握虚拟语气用法, 说话人会用虚拟语气来表达自己的观点和态度。

4) 注意说话人使用转折词 but, but 后的信息往往是考点。

5) 若选项中有两面观点, 鲜明地截然相反, 非此即彼, 答案很可能在其中。

6) 熟悉口语中表示赞同或反对的惯用表达方式, 如:

You can say that again. (你说的没错)

I can't agree more. (你说的太对了)

I'm not sure.

I doubt ...

I'd rather ...

例题再现

What does the man mean?

A. He gives the woman permission.

B. He is not sure if the woman can go.

C. He refuses to give the woman permission.

原文: W: Would it be all right if I left the room for a moment?

You see I have to reply a call.

M: I'd rather you didn't if you don't mind. You see this is a very important part of the meeting.

[解析: 观点态度题。男士用 I'd rather 的虚拟语气表示反对, 认为女士不该出去打电话, 答案选 C]

2. 行为方式题

命题规律:



1) 这类对话中会出现一系列的动作, 动作有先后顺序。

2) 这些动作往往与一些表示时间的连词、介词、副词紧密联系。

3) 对话中同时出现几个人或几件事, 问其中的某人做了什么事:

4) 常见提问方式:

- What are the speakers going to do?
- What does the man/woman plan to do?
- What will the man/woman most probably do?
- What will the man/woman do first?
- What's the man/woman going to do?

高分技巧

1) 留心题目中每个动作及动作对应的人和时间。

2) 抓住对话中出现的表动作先后顺序的连词、介词、副词, 如: first, before, after, right now, now, then, since, last 等。

3) 注意对话中所使用的时态和重复出现的词, 它们往往是答题的关键。

例题再现。

What will the woman do next?

- A. Turn down the radio.
- B. Close the window.
- C. Go to bed.

原文: M: Would you be good enough to turn the radio down a bit?
It's a little bit loud.

W: Oh, of course!

【解析】: 这是行为方式题, 提问中的 do next 表明问的是下一女士要做什么, 听时



应时注意听说话者提到的动作, M 说 turn the radio down, W 回答说当然, 这是赞同的表示, 所以女士接下来会 turn down the radio, 故选 A.]

3. 地点场景题

命题规律

1) 地点题一般由where引出, 选项一般是“介词+地点名”构成, 这类题中, 有些地点会直接提到, 有些要根据讨论的内容判断, 还有的兼而有之。

2) 此类题往往列举一系列与时间或地点相关的细节, 然后针对某一细节提问。

3) 此类题会涉及几个地点, 迷惑性强, 要一一记录。

4) 常见提问方式:

- Where is the conversation most probably taking place?
- Where are the two speakers?

高分技巧

1) 熟悉与某特定地点或场所有关的词或短语, 以此判断对话发生的地点或场所, 如:

boarding - 出现, 立即想到机场/码头; 听到 book a room 就想到在旅馆等。

2) 边听边标记, 善于掌握对话中关键词。

例题再现

Where does the conversation take place?

A. at home B. In a travel agency C. In a hotel

原文: M: Good morning, can I help you?

W: Yes, we are thinking of going on a holiday somewhere, but we're not sure where to go.

M: I see. So what kind of holiday do you want?

W: Lots of sunshine.



解析: 地点场景题。对话内容是关于出行旅游的, 显然是在旅游代理机构进行的, 故选B。

4. 意见建议题

命题规律

1) 对话中往往一方提出请求或问题, 另一方给出建议。

2) 对话中常出现一些表示建议或请求的句型。

3) 常见提问方式。

- What does the man/woman suggest the woman/man do?
- What does the man/woman suggest/mean?
- What does the man/woman want the woman/man to do?
- What offer did the man/woman give?
- What is the man's/woman's advice?

高分技巧

1) 大多数情况下, 第二个人说话内容是题目重点。无论第一个人提出的是请求还是建议, 第二个人的态度和反应往往是解题关键。

2) 女神原则, 在英文国家, 女性往往有着女神的代表, 因此在建议类题目中, 通常情况下, 不是绝对对女性给出的建议男士都会选择听取并执行。

3) 熟记表请求或建议的句型:

① 表请求

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| • Would you please? | • Could/Would you ...? |
| • I wonder if ...? | • Would you like to ...? |
| • Would you mind ...? | • Can/Should I ...? |

② 表建议

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| • If I were you, I'd ... | • You'll have to .../get to ... |
| • Why don't you/we ...? | • Why not ...? |
| • You'd better ... | • How about ...? |
| • You might as well ... | • Why bother ...? |



例题再现

What the woman's advice?

A. The man should have a health check up.

B. The man should invite someone to help him.

C. The man should send the machine to the repair shop.

原文: M: Oh dear, there's something wrong with my computer. Shall I ask Jack to take it?

W: Well, I'd suggest you take it over to the repair store to have a check.

【解析】这是意见建议题。解题关键在第二个人的回答，送去 repair store 修。此类题找答案时，要寻找越相似越准确的答案。send = take over I

5. 因果关系题

命题规律

1) 对话中出现一些表因果关系的标志性词。

2) 大部分因果关系表达不会直接出现信号词，而是比较含蓄，往往先肯定的表明赞同的态度，然后利用转折说出直接原因。如 I'd love to..., but...; I wish I could, but...

3) 此类题选项中的几个所表述的事最能导致同一结果。

4) 典型提问方式:

• Why...?

• What is the reason for...?

• What is the cause of...?

• For what purpose did he/she...?

高分技巧



1) 若有重点在原因，一般由对话中第二个人说出。

2) 熟悉表因果的词: because, since, for, so, as, cause, because of.

now that, due to, thanks to, owing to, as a result of, give rise to, result in, result from, be responsible for, so that, such... that...

例题再现

Why does the woman buy the clothes in Paris?

A. The price is low.

B. The style is good.

C. The material is good.

原文: M: Isn't it very expensive to buy these clothes in Paris?

W: Yes, it is more expensive than in London, but I like the French styles better.

解析: 因果系题。重点看第二句, 首先用 yes 表明肯定, 然后用 but 转折, 表明真正原因, 故选 B

6. 身份关系题

命题规律

1) 说话人间的关系不同, 其原因、语句、语气也不同

2) 对话中不直接说出某人身份, 要求从对话中判断

3) 此类题提问方式较固定, 常见的有:

• What's the man/woman?

• Who's the man/woman?

• What does the man/woman do?

• What is he/she likely to be?



• What's the man's/woman's job/occupation/profession?
probable

• What's the probably relationship between the two speakers?

高分技巧

1) 抓住对话中与职业身份相关的关键词、术语、环境。

2) 注意两人的语气、口吻、亲密度。

3) 熟悉与职业和人物关系相关的词汇, 如:

clerk & customer 职员、顾客

librarian & student 图书管理员、学生

waiter & customer 服务员、顾客

salesman & customer 售货员、顾客

doctor & patient 医生、病人

police & driver 警察、司机

conductor & passenger 售票员、乘客

boss & secretary 老板、秘书

repairman & customer 修理工、顾客

professor & student 教授、学生

例题再议

What's the probably probable relationship between the speakers?

A. Driver and passenger

B. Boss and secretary

C. Luggage and checker and traveler

原文: M: I'd like to check my baggage. Here's my ticket.

W: Sure. Are you going to make any stopover?

M: No, I'm going straight to Chicago.

解析: 身份关系题。对话中提到 check my baggage, go straight to Chicago,

可见是在机场的行李登记处, 是旅客与登记员间的对话, 选 C. I

T. 数字信息题.

命题规律



1) 该类题常涉及时间、日期、价格、年龄、距离、速度、电话号码等。

2) 命题形式为数字辨析和计算。

3) 对话中常出现易混淆的数序: 如: thirteen 和 thirty.

4) 出现与数序运算有关的词, 如: double, twice, couple, times, quarter, divide.

add up 加总

与常见提问方式有:

• How much / many ... ?

• How far ... ?

• How long ... ?

• What time ... ?

• When ... ?

高分技巧

1) 边听边记录数序

2) 注意数序的单位.

3) 注意数序的读法.

例题再现

How many days has the boy stayed there for the second time?

A. ~~Four~~ Four days B. Fourteen days C. Seventeen days

原文: W: How long have you been there?

M: I stayed there for a fortnight ^{二周} the first time and there days longer the second time.

[解析: 数序信息题. 题干中出两序数词, 比较级, 最高级, 要圈出. 这里是 the second time. 对话中提到第一次住了 a fortnight (即 2 周, 14 天), 第二次比第一次住了 3 天, 那就是 $14 + 3 = 17$ 天. 故选 C.]



长对话或独白

长对话形式是短对话的一种扩充,增加信息量,不仅要求听懂,还要记住对话中的关键信息。对话内容涉及学生熟悉的场景,分为学习、生活、工作三大类。学习包括读书、考试、谈论学业等;生活包括日常生活、酒店预订、旅游观访等;工作包括求职事务、求职面试等。

独白信息量大,篇幅较长,句子相对复杂。高考中所出的最后一题是独白,内容较广,包括故事、传记、解说、讲座、通知、新闻报道等。题材大部分是科技、文化、教育、卫生、交通、能源、生活常识等。下面我来介绍下长对话或独白的主要设题点:

1. 开头和结尾

开头:长对话一般考两类题:第一类是主旨题,第二类是场景题,其答案主要有三个来源:1) 开头句型 2) 开头原词 3) 高频原词。

结尾:一般为文章的主旨句考查处,是对文章的概括总结。

例题再视

What's the topic of the conversation?

A. How to relax B. How to give advice C. How to make a good impression

原文:

M: Hi, how are you getting along?

W: Everything is fine.

M: When I encounter a stranger, how will I make a good impression?

W: Just relax and be yourself.

M: That's a good idea. When I greet someone, I will smile and ask if I can help them.

W: When I present myself, I will also use some gestures to show that I am full of energy.

M: Many books suggest that you should stride into a room and greet the person with a firm handshake.

W: I don't agree with you about that because you'll drive everyone crazy.

M: People impress me when they speak clearly.

W: Yes, some people talk so fast that others have trouble understanding them.

M: Do you think it is important to use humor?

W: Yes, I'm not impressed with people who are too serious. Smile and be consistent from one situation to another.

M: Thank you for your advice.

W: It's my pleasure.



What is the monologue mainly about?
(独白)

A. a rocket

B. an aircraft

C. a probe

原文:

M: China's first Mars probe, Yinghuo-1, is expected to be launched in the second half of this year, and official of the Shanghai Academy of Spaceflight Technology (SAST) said Thursday.

The Probe had passed test of the research phase, Zhang Weiqiang, deputy secretary of SAST Committee of the Communist Party of China, told the third Shanghai International Aerospace Technology and Equipment Exhibition.

The event runs from Thursday to Saturday and includes a full-scale model of Yinghuo-1.

Yinghuo-1 will be launched by a Russian carrier rocket, accompanied by the Russian aircraft Planos-Griat. The Russian aircraft is making a sample return mission to Phobos, one of the moons of Mars, Zhang said.

Yinghuo-1 would go into Mars orbit in 2010 after a 10-month, 350-million-kilometer journey, Zhang said. But unlike the Russian craft, Yinghuo-1 won't land but would only orbit and observe, Zhang said.

The Chinese probe is 75 centimeters long, 75 cm wide and 60 cm high. It weighs 115 kilograms and was designed for a two-year life, according to Zhang. "Yinghuo" means light from firefly in Chinese. Yinghuo-1 is expected to discover why water disappeared from Mars and explain other environmental changes of the planet, Zhang said.

The project is China's third major space exploration plan after the manned space project and the moon exploration program. It was also the first time that China would explore another planet, Zhang said.

1. 解析: 主旨题, probe 不认识没关系, 独白中第一句就提到了中国第一次火星探索, 故选 C

2. 对话中的问答

一般在对话中会出现一人提出问题, 另一人回答, 这时, 提出的问题很重要, 极有可能是最后考到的问题, 而这个问题的答案必然要记住!

3. 主要内容

在听长对话时, 始终要想到两个人谈话的主题是什么, 要传达什么样的信息, 表明什么样的观点, 这就是长对话的主要内容, 一般观点最多两个, 若能抓住, 得分可能性会大大提高, 这也适用于独白题。



4. 重要细节

长对话中总的细节, 一般都是最重要的细节, 也就是与主题或主要内容

关系最密切的细节。次要细节一般不会考，这也适用于独白段。

★区分重要细节和非重要细节有以下3个规律可参考：

- ① 强调。对话中被说话者反复强调的内容是重要细节，强调的方式有语调、语气上的强调，当说话人念得很重、很慢，或有停顿时往往是强调处。
 决 | actually.
| particularly.
| especially.
- ② 重复。重复的内容有两种，一种是某个词的重复，另一种是意思的重复，也就是同义复现。
- ③ 最高级。这是考试的重点，当听到 the most important, the first, first of, all 等，要多加注意。

5. 逻辑关系处。

表示并列、转折、因果、条件等逻辑关系的地方往往也是出题的重点。当出现 as well as, furthermore, what's more, in addition, but, not only... but also..., however, because, because of, therefore, since, so, if, even if, even though 时重点关注。

6. 引言处

短文独白中提到的人物观点和见解都引文或作者对别处文段的应用，也都关注。

7. 列举、举例处。

当听到 such as, that is, for example, for instance, the first, the second 等列举、举例时，要多加注意并做好记录。

8. 数据信息。

一般不会有直接数据，但会有与之相关的信息，要注意所年代、时间、数量、留意与之相关的信息，做好记录。



9. 建议处

当听到 You'd better ..., why not ... 等表建议的句子时, 需重点关注。

三. 解题方略

一) 试音时调整好心态。

二) 超前一步, 抢先看题。

* 考前利用试音和读题的时间, 快速浏览选项, 圈出关键词。

* 对于长句, 采用快速跳读方式, 分两步处理: 第一步, 从整体上看发现共同成分。
第二步, 采取细读方式, 着重看区别, 做到心中有数。

三) 听音时, 理解全文大意, 速记重要信息。

若有没听清或遗漏的, 那么果断放弃先听下面的, 千万别在回想上题, 影响下面做题的集中度。

专题二. 单项选择

一. 大纲完全解读

一) 题型介绍

高考单项选择共有15题, 每小题1分, 满分15分, 答题参考时间约7~8min。

二) 命题要求

高考单项选择主要有对话类、词汇辨析类和语法类试题, 主要考查对情景交际用语的运用, 对词汇的词义或用法运用, 以及各种语法测试点: 冠词、名词、代词、形容词、副词、非谓语动词、复合句、倒装句、省略句、强调句等。



具体的讲解在本书中的第一部分语法知识中, 已有非常详尽的解答。

下面再简单回顾一下:

一、动词

动词是主要的考查项目，在高考中占了相当大的比例。动词又分为几项：

非谓语动词、动词词义辨析、动词短语以及情态动词。

1. 非谓语动词：非谓语动词分为不定式、动名词、分词，主要依靠两大表格区分其用法：

表一：

	主语	宾语	表语	定语	状语	补足语
不定式 to do	√	√	√	√	√	√
V-ing	动名词	√	√	√	√	
	现在分词			√	√	√
V-ed 分词			√	√	√	√

表二：

	一般式	被动式	完成式	否定式	复合结构
to do	to do	to be done	to have done	not to do	for sb to do
V-ing	doing	being done	having done	not doing	Sb/sb's+doing
V-ed	done				

2. 常考动词词义辨析

- (1) 六穿：put on, pull on, dress, wear, have on, be in
- (2) 三建议：advise, persuade, suggest
- (3) 三个看起来：look, seem, appear
- (4) 四打击：beat, hit, strike, knock
- (5) 五输赢：win, defeat, beat, gain, fail
- (6) 四想要：hope, wish, expect, want
- (7) 七花费：pay, take, cost, spend, charge, buy, sell
- (8) 三收到：receive, accept, get
- (9) 六伤害：hurt, injure, wound, damage, destroy, ruin
- (10) 四变成：become, go, turn, grow

3. 常考动词与短语搭配

- (1) have 的各种搭配及用法
- (2) make 的各种搭配及用法
- (3) do 及其短语的用法
- (4) go, come 及其短语的用法
- (5) break 及其短语的用法
- (6) call 及其短语的用法

4. 情态动词

- (1) 情态动词的词义
- (2) “情态动词+完成式”的用法
- (3) 情态动词在一般疑问句中的问与答
- (4) shall 的人称功能
- (5) would, used to 与 be used to

二、名词

近几年名词的常考点为：

1. 名词词义的辨析及习惯搭配
2. 物质名词和抽象名词的具体化
3. 名词的可数性与不可数性
4. 名词所有格和 of 表示所有的用法区别
5. 名次直接作定语的用法

三、形容词与副词

形容词与副词是英语中的常用词，涉及面比较广。在近几年高考试题中的具体考点为：

1. 形容词、副词的原级、比较级和最高级
2. 形容词、副词的同义词辨析
3. 多个形容词作定语时的位置、顺序
4. 合成形容词的用法
5. 以-ly 结尾的副词与其他形式的副词的区别
6. 不用 very 修饰的形容词及其短语
7. very 与 much 的区别
8. so 与 such 的区别
9. too much 与 much too 的区别

四、冠词

冠词的用法很复杂，高考对冠词的考查主要有：

1. 不定冠词 a/an 的用法
2. 定冠词 the 的用法
3. 不定冠词的情况
4. 冠词的位置

五、介词

介词是英语学习中的复杂内容，大多数介词都有许多用法，但近几年高考试题有关介词的考查主要集中在各种不同的搭配：

1. 介词与名词的搭配
2. 介词与动词的搭配
3. 介词与形容词的搭配

六、代词

代词在英语词汇中占的比例不大，但类别多，用法复杂，难于区别。其常考点主要有：

1. 替代词 it, that, one 的用法比较
2. 表示概括意义的不定代词 all, every, each, both, either, any 等
3. all, both, every 与 not 连用表示部分否定；none, neither 表示全部否定
4. other, the other, others, the others, any other, another 等



七. 定语从句

定语从句在近几年高考试题中的测试率很高, 其_____的让步状语从句的语序

主要考查内容为:

1. which 在非限制性定语从句中的用法

2. 关系代词与关系副词的区别

3. “介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句

4. 关系代词 as 与 which 的用法区别

5. 作定语用的关系代词 whose 的用法

6. “名词, 代词, 数词等+of which (whom)”的

用法

八. 状语从句

英语中状语从句的种类比较多, 主要有九类: 时

间状语从句, 原因状语从句, 条件状语从句, 让步状

语从句, 地点状语从句, 地点状语从句, 比较状语从

句, 比较状语从句, 目的状语从句, 结果状语从句和

方式状语从句, 其常考点主要有:

1. 连词 when, while 的用法及意义区别

2. 状语从句中连词的选择与状语从句类别的判断

3. 特殊的时间状语从句的连接词

4. “疑问句-ever”与“no more

5. 常考连词 as, before, since 的各种意义及句型

6. 时间、条件、让步状语从句时态与主句的呼应

7. 某些状语从句中的省略问题

九. 名词性从句

名词性从句的考查不仅是从语法角度, 而且越来越

注重逻辑关系, 具体考点为:

1. what, that, which 的用法区别

2. it 充当形式主语、宾语, 而主语从句、宾语从

句后移的句型

3. whether 与 if 的区别

4. 表示“建议、要求、命令”等后的名词性从句

要用虚拟语气

5. 某些名次后的同位语从句与定语从句的判断

十. 倒装句与强调句

1. 必须使用倒装的条件与句式

2. 强调句型的特殊疑问形式

3. 强调句型与主语从句的区别

4. 强调句型中的 it 与时间代词 it 的区别

三. 考题分析 (参阅第一部分语法)

三. 解题方略

1. 稳中求快

英语高考的时间很紧, 大都在阅读、写作单选主要靠平时积累, 因此一定要快, 千万不能因为是第一道题型就慢慢做, 要相信自己, 用最短的时间解决, 绝不可因为题目的不确定而思虑太久, 耽误时间, 这样不仅耗时, 也会影响心态。

2. 切忌断章取义, 以偏盖全 [无教考生的所谓粗心, 就是我在这儿了]

有同学一眼看到题目十分眼熟, 看几个大概就选记忆中的答案, 切忌不可, 不能只看半句, 只看大概, 一定要看完整句题目再答题, 这个时间不可省。

3. 注意熟词新义, 切忌守陈规, 不知变通。



命题者会运用一些平时考生常见的词汇, 但考查其不为考生所熟悉的含义和用法, 平时背单词要全面把握词语的意思和用法。

专题三 完形填空

一、大纲解读与考题分析

1. 题型介绍

完形填空 (cloze) 测试考生各个方面的语言理解能力及语言运用能力。内容是同学熟悉的题材, 这部分共 20 分, 有 20 小题, 每题 1 分, 参考答题时间为 15 min。

2. 考题分析

1. 词汇辨析题

完形填空中的词汇辨析题主要考查学生根据上下文选择恰当的实词 (动词、名词、形容词、副词) 的能力, 所占比例相当大。此类题的四个选项或词形相似, 或词义相近。需要考生具备一定的词汇辨析能力, 能结合上下文提供的信息, 分辨选项之细微差异, 作出正确的判断。

在选项设置方面, 有两种方式:

一、四个选项毫无关系, 只要认识, 对上下文理解正确, 就可正确选择。

二、四个选项为同义词或近义词。

词汇辨析

A boy was walking home from school when he saw a large, tempting (诱人的) apple on one of the branches of an apple tree hanging out over a tall fence. The boy wasn't much of a fruit-eater. 1 a bar of chocolate if given the choice.

1. A. preferring B. offering C. receiving D. allowing

选 A

解析: A 与愿 B 提供 C 接收 D 允许

此题则说他不是爱吃水果的人, 与后文若

给他选择巧克力机会, 他应该会选择巧克力, 这是根据上下文词汇辨析了

His school bag wouldn't give enough height and he didn't want to

10 the things inside, like his lunch box, pencil case, and Game-

10. A. break B. shake C. take D. strike



选 A

解析: A 弄坏 B 援助 C 拿起 D 击

下文提到书包里的便当盒、铅笔盒、电子

游戏机等, 可推断他不想弄到书包上,

免得弄坏这些东西, 这是词汇辨析了

近义辨析

(2011.福建)

By the end of October 2009, she had completed all certificate requirements. Within two years after her arrival in Canada, Diana at last achieved her original goal when her new store opened its doors in Toronto's Sheppard Center. She was on the fast-track to 18.

18. A. success B. wealth C. glory D. happiness

[解析: 依据上文, Diana 实现她的目标, 所以此处应指成功]

- A 成功 B 财富 C 辉煌 D 幸福

选A

2. 惯用搭配题

这里说的惯用搭配, 是指由主词(包括动词, 名词和形容词), 结合副词或者介词构成的短语及惯用法。要想准确快速答好此类题, 复习时要区别副词介词含义, 弄清语法部分动词的搭配

Though Diana

(2011.福建)

met with the language barrier, she was always going 15 while at college.

15. A. around B. back C. ahead D. out

[解析: go ahead 领先前进
go around 四处走动
go back 回去
go out 出去]

选C

根据句意及固定词组可知, 即使Diana遇到语言障碍, 她还是继续前进了

(2011.北京)

game, so I decided to 12 on learning the game, do my best at each practise session, and not be too hard on myself for the things I didn't 13 "just yet".

12. A. focus B. act C. rely D. try

[解析: focus on 集中精力...
act on 对...起作用
rely on 依靠
try on 试穿]

选A.



下文do my best at...可知作者

下定决心学好篮球, 把精力集中在篮球上

(2011. 北京)

and classmates. I have gone from "18" in the back of the classroom and not wanting to call attention to myself. 19 raising my hand—even when I sometimes wasn't 100 percent 20 I had the right answer. Now I have more self-confidence in myself.

19. A. by B. for C. with D. to

[解析: 由上文 I have gone from ...

可知设空处应该用 to, from... to ...

为习惯搭配]

选 D

3. 逻辑衔接问题

逻辑衔接问题是完形填空中最复杂的题型, 全面考查学生对文章的理解和把握。逻辑衔接也就是句与句之间或句子内部的逻辑关系, 一般题目会要求考生根据上下文选择恰当的逻辑衔接词。

(2011. 江苏)

He had tried everything he could think to do. 13 seeing any other choices, he gave up and started to walk 14. At first he felt

13. A. After B. through C. without D. Upon

[解析: 下文提到 he gave up, 可知他放弃了,

应该是看不到其他机会, without

[seeing any other choices]

选 C

(2011. 陕西)

The first could not stand seeing the poverty. 4 he took all the gold and jewels from his wagons (四轮载重马车) and shared

4. A. unless B. because C. so D. if

[解析: 由题意可知, 第一个富人不忍看到

人们如此贫困, 因此他把车上的金银

珠宝都卸下车来了]

选 C

Two years ago, I decided that I would need to have some kind of extra work to 5 my disability pension (残疾抚恤金). 6 I

needed to sleep in the afternoons. I was limited in my 7. I decided that I would consider 8 to singing in restaurants.

6. A. If B. As C. Though D. Before

[解析: 由于我需要在下午睡一会儿,

所以 因为, 由于]



选 B

4. 语法结构题

主要指对倒装句、从句、虚拟语气及平行结构等语法关系的考查，考查的形式主要是相关连接词的选择以及从句的判断。

这要求我们在做题时，首先，认真判断代词在上下文中的指代关系，注意指人还是指物以及单复数问题；其次，认真判断从句的类型，是名词性从句、定语从句还是状语从句；第三，熟悉特殊的句子结构，如强调句it is... that...，及虚拟语气的各种形式等。

(2011, 江西)

12. _____ seemed to go right. She spilt the flour. she dropped an egg and she cut her finger. Despite all the troubles, she _____ 13 _____ to get the

12. A. everything B. something
C. anything D. nothing

解析：由下文可知，她打碎了鸡蛋，割破了手指，一切都糟糕透了，所以 nothing

seemed to go right. I

选D.

(2010, 山东)

_____ really was an _____ move. I was concentrating so much on _____ 9 _____ the huge smile on my face and holding my head up that I did not look

_____ 10 _____ I was going. I missed my partner's box altogether and _____ 11 _____

10. A. why B. whether C. where D. what

解析：这里用 where 引导状语从句

表示地点，我只顾笑对观众，却没有注意脚下，I

选C.

(2009, 福建)

_____ did not lose sight of what he valued most. In one of the darkest times _____ 2 _____ his strong-minded grandfather was nearly _____ 3 _____

_____ he loaded his family into the car and _____ 4 _____ them to see family members in Canada with a _____ 5 _____. "There are more important things in life than money."

2. A. when B. while C. how D. why

解析：本句的主句是：

he loaded his family into the car...

由此可知，设空处所在句子为定语从句，

先行词 one of the darkest times 在

定语从句中作状语，故用 when I



选A.

二. 完形填空高分技巧

1. 运用逻辑关系解题

每篇文章都有其发展脉络, 完形填空的文章也不例外, 其段落、句间都有逻辑上的必然关联, 通过把握文章的逻辑关系, 不仅可以准确掌握段与段、句子与句子间的关系, 正确解答关系逻辑衔接类题目, 而且可以迅速确定文章的中心和基本结构, 从而准确把握上下文语义, 提高整体答题速度和数量。

具体来说, 完形填空涉及的逻辑关系主要有以下几种:

转折关系: but, however, though, whereas, nevertheless 等.

因果关系: so, therefore, thus, because, for, since, as 等.

顺序关系: before, after, first, second, in addition, then, next, finally 等.

让步关系: though, although, despite, in spite of 等.

条件关系: if, unless, once, provided that 等.

解释关系: that is to say, in other words 等.

并列关系: and, while 等.

(2009. 2. 26)

The requirements for high school graduation have just changed in my community. As a result, all students must 1 sixty hours of service learning. 2 they will not receive a diploma. Service learn

2. A. and B. or C. but D. for

[解析: 依据制题关系推断此处表示“否则”(or),

and 表递进, for 表原因

but 表转折]

选 B.

2. 运用上下文解题

完形填空要求在理解全文的基础上作答, 因为完形填空的文章是一个意义相关的语篇, 围绕某个特定的话题展开, 因此在同一语篇中各种相关词汇必定同时出现或反复出现, 利用这一特点, 考生在解题时应联系上下文, 寻找相关线索。



同样, 熟悉语境也有助于最终确定答案, 上下文语境指段落之间、句子之

同、词语之间所有的上下文，狭义的语篇则指句子内部的词语之间在语义上的联系。但由于在做题时不能重复阅读文章，因此要培养捕捉信息的能力。

记住“文中无闲句，句中无闲词”这一原则。

(2010. 原创)

...came very 10. There was now a sense of anxiety and fear that could be 11 noticed. Every passenger simply held on for dear life...except one. A 12 was having a good time! With each bump of the 13, he would let out a giggle (咯咯的笑) of delight. As I observed this, I 14 that he didn't know he was supposed to be afraid and worried about his 15. He neither thought about the past nor about the future. Those are what we grown-ups have learned from 16. He was 17 the ride because had not yet been taught to fear it. Having understood this, I took a deep breath and 18 back into my seat, pretending I was 19 on a roller coaster. I smiled for the rest of the flight. I even 20 to giggle once or twice, much to the chagrin (懊恼) of the man sitting next to me holding the airsickness bag.

20. A. attempted B. managed C. wanted D. decided

解析: attempted to 尽力去做

managed to do 成功做到

want to do 想去做

decided to do 决定做

根据下文，“我”也像那个傻小子

一样笑了，这是读完全文后把握整体得出的

选B.

(2011. 全国1)

In our discussion with people on how education can help them succeed in life, a woman remembered the first meeting of an introductory 1 course about 20 years ago.

The professor 2 the lecture hall, placed upon his desk a large jar filled with dried beans (豆), and invited the students to 3 how many beans the jar contained. After 4 shouts of wildly wrong guesses the professor smiled a thin, dry smile, announced the 5 answer, and went on saying, "You have just 6 an important lesson about science. That is Never 7 your own senses."

1. A. art B. history C. science D. math

解析: 由第2段倒数第二句可看出,

学科是science, 因此选C.

像这样的题, 原文一定会给提示, 一

开始可以先看看了



选C.

三、运用主旨句解题

外形填写的文章内容完整,全篇围绕一个特定主题展开,因此首先要树立语篇观念,抓住文章中心思想。外形填写文章的首句通常是完整的,有可能是文章的主题句,或者能为考生理解文章的主题和主要内容提供必要的线索。而且,篇章的主旨决定了所有的细节,换句话说,一切细节都是为主题服务的,这给考生答题,尤其是篇章逻辑题中的语境理解类题目,提供了很多依据。

It was a cool October evening. Excitement and family members 36 the hall. I was only a 7-year-old girl, but I was the center of 37. Finally, after weeks of preparation, I would 38 all my hard work in a dance of performance.

36. A. filled B. visited
C. attended D. decorated
37. A. pressure B. impression
C. debate D. attention
38. A. take over B. show off
C. look after D. give up

解析:从文章前两句可以看出本文是记叙文,时间是10月份的一个晚上,地点是演播厅内,主要事件是我“通过舞蹈展示自己的劳动成果。”

36 选A 37 选D 38 选B

四、运用常识解题

外形填写中有些题是可以根据我们的常识和习惯来作答,即使对原文不很明白,也会轻而易举得出正确答案。

五、运用文化背景知识答题。

外形填写中涉及各类相关知识与常识,从文化、科学常识到历史、地理知识,从风土民情到民族习惯等,无所不包。做题时,已调动已有的文化背景知识,巧妙加以运用,特别注意中西方文化间存在的巨大差异



六、运用固定搭配或习惯用法解题。

虽然近几年高考英语试卷中的考题偏重于高层次的篇章理解题,即通过上下文来确定答案,但仍有一部分命题与词汇是由前后固定搭配条件决定的。属于这一层次的考点,包括冠词与名词的搭配、介词与名词的搭配、介词与形容词的搭配、介词与动词的搭配、介词与动词间的固定搭配,还包括一些习语等。

七、运用排除法解题。

做题形时,经常会遇到这样的情况,考生对某个题目所给选项的含义,用词不太清楚,但其他三个选项明显不合适,可以试试用排除法。

运用排除法可逐项检查、验证,发现干扰项即排除。

这样可以节省时间和精力,达到理想效果。

(当然,这里,如果是课后自己练习做题,事后一定要把新选项的含义,用词解释明白,然后记录在自己的笔记本或是错题集上,随时翻看,把知识化为自己的~)。

(2008江苏)

"Early on I decided not to allow the 1 of others to stop me from becoming a musician. I grew up on a farm in northeast Scotland and began 2 piano lessons when I was eight. The older I got, the more my

2. A. enjoying B. choosing C. taking D. giving

选A.

解析:动词修饰的n是 piano.

不管是B、C还是D,皆与 piano 相连

一起用,都要使用冠词,此处没有,

所以可以直接排除,故为A)。

三、四步解题方略

1. 细读首句,进入语境

2. 速读全文,掌握主旨



3. 前后联系,仔细辨析

4. 念题复核,修正答案

四. 真题再现. (来练练手吧~) → 有些题目前面分析过了, 看掌握没? 心

CLZE 1 (2010. 江苏)

Another person's enthusiasm was what set me moving toward the success I have achieved. That person was my stepmother.

I was nine years old when she entered our home in rural Virginia. My father 1 me to her with these words: "I would like you to meet the fellow who is 2 for being the worst boy in this county and will probably start throwing rocks at you no 3 than tomorrow morning."

My stepmother walked over to me, 4 my head slightly upward, and looked me right in the eye. Then she looked at my father and replied, "You are 5. This is not the worst boy at all. 6 the smartest one who hasn't yet found an outlet (释放的途径) for his enthusiasm."

That statement began a(n) 7 between us. No one had ever called me smart. My family and neighbors had built me up in my 8 as a bad boy. My stepmother changed all that.

She changed many things. She 9 my father to go to a dental school, from which he graduated with honors. She moved our family into the county seat, where my father's career could be more 10 and my brother and I could be better 11.

When I turned fourteen, she bought me a secondhand 12 and told me that she believed that I could become a writer. I knew her enthusiasm. I 13 it, and I saw how it had already improved our lives. I accepted her 14 and began to write for local newspapers. I was doing the same kind of 15 that great day I went to interview Andrew Carnegie and received the task which became my life's work later. I wasn't the 16 beneficiary (受益者). My father became the 17 man in town. My brothers and stepbrothers became a physician, a dentist, a lawyer, and a college president.

What power 18 has! When that power is released to support the certainty of one's purpose and is 19 strengthened by faith, it becomes an irresistible (不可抗拒的) force which poverty and temporary defeat can never 20.

You can communicate that power to anyone who needs it. This is probably the greatest work you can do with your enthusiasm.

- | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. rushed | B. sent | C. carried | D. introduced | 11. A. treated | B. entertained | C. educated | D. respected |
| 2. A. distinguished | B. favored | C. rewarded | D. mistaken | 12. A. camera | B. radio | C. bicycle | D. typewriter |
| 3. A. sooner | B. later | C. longer | D. earlier | 13. A. considered | B. suspected | C. ignored | D. appreciated |
| 4. A. dragged | B. shook | C. raised | D. bent | 14. A. belief | B. request | C. criticism | D. description |
| 5. A. perfect | B. right | C. wrong | D. impolite | 15. A. teaching | B. writing | C. studying | D. reading |
| 6. A. but | B. so | C. and | D. or | 16. A. next | B. same | C. only | D. real |
| 7. A. agreement | B. friendship | C. gap | D. relationship | 17. A. cleverest | B. wealthiest | D. healthiest | |
| 8. A. opinion | B. image | C. expectation | D. mind | 18. A. enthusiasm | B. sympathy | D. confidence | |
| 9. A. begged | B. persuaded | C. ordered | D. invited | 19. A. deliberately | B. happily | D. constantly | |
| 10. A. successful | B. meaningful | C. helpful | D. useful | 20. A. win | B. match | D. doubt | |
| | | | | C. reach | | | |



cloze 7 (2011·全国I)

In our discussion with people on how education can help them succeed in life, a woman remembered the first meeting of an introductory 1 course about 20 years ago.

The professor 2 the lecture hall, placed upon his desk a large jar filled with dried beans (豆), and invited the students to 3 how many beans the jar contained. After 4 shouts of wildly wrong guesses the professor smiled a thin, dry smile, announced the 5 answer, and went on saying, "You have just 6 an important lesson about science. That is: Never 7 your own senses."

Twenty years later, the 8 could guess what the professor had in mind. He 9 himself, perhaps, as inviting his students to start an exciting 10 into an unknown world invisible (无形的) to the 11, which can be discovered only through scientific 12. But the seventeen-year-old girl could not accept or even 13 the invitation. She was just 14 to understand the world. And she 15 that her firsthand experience could be the 16. The professor, however, said that it was 17. He was taking away her only 18 for knowing and was providing her with no substitute (替代). "I remember feeling small and 19," the woman says, "and I did the only thing I could do. I 20 the course that afternoon, and I haven't gone near science since."

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. art | B. history | C. science | D. math |
| 2. A. searched for | | B. looked at | |
| | C. got through | D. marched into | |
| 3. A. count | B. guess | C. report | D. watch |
| 4. A. warning | B. giving | C. turning away | D. listening to |
| 5. A. ready | B. possible | C. correct | D. difficult |
| 6. A. learned | B. prepared | C. taught | D. taken |
| 7. A. lose | B. trust | C. sharpen | D. show |
| 8. A. lecturer | B. scientist | C. speaker | D. woman |
| 9. A. described | B. respected | C. saw | D. served |
| 10. A. voyage | B. movement | C. change | D. rush |
| 11. A. professor | B. eye | C. knowledge | D. light |
| 12. A. model | B. senses | C. spirit | D. methods |
| 13. A. hear | B. make | C. present | D. refuse |
| 14. A. suggesting | | B. beginning | |
| | C. pretending | D. waiting | |
| 15. A. believed | B. doubted | C. proved | D. explained |
| 16. A. growth | B. strength | C. faith | D. truth |
| 17. A. firm | B. interesting | C. wrong | D. acceptable |
| 18. A. task | B. tool | C. success | D. connection |
| 19. A. cruel | B. proud | C. frightened | D. brave |
| 20. A. dropped | B. started | C. passed | D. missed |



Cloze 3 (2011.江苏南京一模)

Some years ago I was offered a writing assignment that would require three months of travel through Europe. I had been 36 a couple of times, but I could hardly 37 to know my ways around the continent. 38, my knowledge of foreign languages was 39 to a little college French.

I 40. How would I, unable to speak the language, 41 familiar with local geography or transportation systems, conduct interviews and do 42? It seemed impossible, and with considerable 43 I sat down to write a letter rejecting the 44. Halfway through, a 45 ran through my mind: *you can't learn if you don't try*. So I 46 the assignment.

There were some bad 47. But by the time I had finished the trip, I was an experienced traveler. And ever since, I have never hesitated to head for even the most 48 places, without guides or 49 advanced bookings, confident that somehow I will 50.

The point is that the new, the different, is almost by definition 51. But each time you try something, you learn, and as the learning 52, the world opens to you.

I've learned to ski at 40, and flown up the Rhine River in a(n) 53. And I know I'll go on doing such things. It's not because I'm braver or more daring than others. I'm not. But I'll accept worry as another name for 54 and I believe I can 55 wonders.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 36. A. aboard | B. abroad | C. away | D. out |
| 37. A. claim | B. declare | C. hope | D. deny |
| 38. A. Somehow | B. However | C. Instead | D. Moreover |
| 39. A. accustomed | B. added | C. limited | D. suited |
| 40. A. resigned | B. hesitated | C. trembled | D. suspected |
| 41. A. only too | B. more than | C. apart from | D. far from |
| 42. A. operations | B. experiments | C. research | D. business |
| 43. A. regret | B. doubt | C. terror | D. disappointment |
| 44. A. request | B. job | C. trust | D. assignment |
| 45. A. reaction | B. thought | C. meaning | D. conflict |
| 46. A. accomplished | B. received | C. accepted | D. resisted |
| 47. A. exchanges | B. conditions | C. trips | D. experiences |
| 48. A. remote | B. accessible | C. interesting | D. crowded |
| 49. A. still | B. ever | C. even | D. yet |
| 50. A. do | B. manage | C. make | D. fit |
| 51. A. astonishing | B. frightening | C. fascinating | D. exciting |
| 52. A. comes up | B. shows up | C. piles up | D. steps up |
| 53. A. airplane | B. motorboat | C. surfboard | D. balloon |
| 54. A. goal | B. opportunity | C. struggle | D. challenge |
| 55. A. work | B. own | C. win | D. achieve |

答案核对题目 → 快来看看自己的做的怎么样~

cloze 1

[语篇解读] 本文为记叙夹议文章。作者在家人以及邻居心目中是一个坏孩子的形象,但是继母的热情改变了她,而且改变了父亲以及他人,由此作者得出结论:热情的力量是无法抗拒的。

1. D 因为继母刚到来,并且结合下句引号中的内容可知,父亲是在把我介绍给继母认识。
2. A distinguish 把……区别分类,识别,辨认; favor 赞同,偏爱; mistake 误解,弄错; reward 报答,赏费。根据句意可知父亲认为我是这个县里最坏的孩子,故答案为 A 项。
3. B 根据句意可知,父亲认为我是最坏的孩子,可能过不了明天早上就会翻墙到石头,sooner 更快,later 更晚,longer 更长,earlier 更早, no later than tomorrow morning 意为“不会晚于明天早上”,故答案为 B 项。
4. C 句意:继母朝我走过来,轻轻抬起我的头,注视着我的眼睛。drag 推,拉; shake 晃动; raise 抬起,搅起,升起, head 弯下,根据句意可知答案为 C 项。
5. C 上段提到父亲认为我是最坏的孩子,但根据下句继母对父亲所说的话 This is not the worst boy at all 可知,继母认为父亲错了,故答案为 C 项。
6. A 句意:这根本就不是最坏的孩子,而是最聪明的孩子,只是还没有找到释放热情的途径,not...but...为“固定句式,意为“不是……而是……”,故答案为 A 项。
7. B 句意:那句话使我们之间开始建立友谊,agreement 协议,同意; friendship 友谊; gap 缺口,缝隙; relationship 关系。根据句意以及下文内容可以看出,我们之间开始建立了友谊。
8. D 句意:在我的脑海中,家人以及邻居都已经给我定性为一个坏孩子了。opinion 意见, in my opinion 意为“依我看”,一般用于提出意见; image 形象,印象; expectation 期待,预期; mind 头脑, in my mind 意为“在我的脑海中”,根据句意可知答案为 D 项。
9. B 根据上句“继母改变了很多事情”可以得知,本句意为“她说服了父亲去上牙医学校”。
10. A 句意:她把全家人都带到了县城,在那里父亲的事业会更加成功。successful 成功的; meaningful 有意义的; helpful 有帮助的; useful 有用的,根据句意可知答案为 A 项。
11. C 根据下文可知我正处在上学的年龄阶段,由此可推知“哥哥(弟弟)和我在县城可以接受更好的教育”。
12. D 根据下文 a writer 可推知,“继母给我买了一台二手打字机”。
13. D consider 考虑; suspect 怀疑; ignore 忽视; appreciate 欣赏,根据下半句“我看到了她的情是如何改善我们生活的”可得知,我对此充满感激之情,故答案为 D 项。
14. A 根据本段开头...she believed that I could become a writer 可得知答案为 belief, 与 believed 形成了呼应。
15. B 上文提到继母相信我能成为一名作家,我接受了她的信念开始从事写作,故此处应填 writing, 与上文内容一致。
16. C 根据下句可知,我父亲也是受益者,因此本句句意“我并不是唯一的受益者”。
17. B 第五段最后一句提到父亲的事业更加成功,由此可知“父亲成了镇上最富有的人”。
18. A 概括全文可知,本文主要讲热情的力量,结合文章开头可知答案为 A 项。sympathy 同情; fortune 运气; confidence 信心。
19. D deliberately 故意地,慎重地; happily 高兴地; traditionally 传统地; constantly 不断地,时常地。句意:当热情的力量被释放出来支持一个人达到某种目的并且这种力量被信念不断加强时,它就变得不可抗拒,贫穷和暂时的失败都永远无法与之匹敌,根据句意可知答案为 D 项。
20. B win 赢得,获胜; match 取得过,比得上; reach 达到; doubt 怀疑,根据句意(见上题)可知答案为 B 项,其他均不合句意。

本篇应掌握的重点词汇、词组、句子

• distinguish v. 区分 [高考绝对高频词] 考点: distinguish A from B
distinguished adj. 尊敬的 ~ guest distinguish between

• gap 缺口, 缝隙, 沟 考点: generation gap between ... 代沟

• Another person's enthusiasm was what set me moving toward the success I have achieved.



(当初)是另一个人的热情使我走向了如今的成功。

Cloze 2

1. C 由第二段中的“You have just 6 an important lesson about science.”可知应选C项。
2. D 句意：教授走进演讲厅，把一个装满十豆子的大罐子放在讲桌上……既然要演讲，当然要先进演讲厅，故选D。search for 寻找；look at 看；get through 穿过，通过，完成，接通电话；march into 走进，进入。
3. B count 数，计算；guess 猜测；report 报道；watch 观看，注视。由第二段中的After 4 shouts of wildly wrong guesses...可知B项正确。
4. D 学生们大喊大叫地都猜错了答案，这是教授听到的所以才有后文的教授略微笑了笑一下并宣布了正确答案。warn 警告；give 给予；turn away 把……打发走，拒绝；listen to 听。
5. C 前面提到学生都猜错了答案，故这里应说教授给出了正确答案。ready 准备好的；possible 可能的；correct 正确的；difficult 困难的。
6. A 教授知道学生们是在主观猜测，故说道“在科学方面你们刚刚吸取教训，那就是：永远不要相信自己的感觉。”learn a lesson 吸取一个教训；prepare a lesson 准备一堂课；teach (sb) a lesson 给(某人)一个教训；take a lesson (学生)上课。
7. B lose 丢失，失去；trust 相信，信任；sharpen 使锋利；Show 展示，表明，给……看，结合第6小题的解析可知B项正确。
8. D 由下文描述可知：20年后，那位女士能猜出教授心理想的是什么。
9. C 句意：也许教授认为自己是让学生开始了一次通向一个肉眼看不见的未知世界的令人兴奋的旅程，而这一未知世界只有通过科学手段才能被实现。see...as... 认为……是……，符合语境。describe...as... 把……描述为……；respect...as... 尊……为……；serve...as... 作为……为……服务，均不符合语境。
10. A 此处 voyage 指抽象的探索科学真理的过程。movement 活动，运动；change 变化；rush 冲，匆忙，都表达不出科学探索之路的艰辛。
11. B an unknown world invisible to the eye 肉眼看不见的未知世界。Professor 教授，knowledge 知识，light 光线，均不符合题意。
12. D 肉眼看不见的未知世界只有通过科学手段去发现。model 模型，样式，模范，模特；sense 感官，感觉，意义；spirit 精神，实质；method 手段，方法。
13. A 但是当时17岁的女孩无法接受甚至听不明白教授的启发。根据句意可知A项正确，hear 听明白，听清楚；make 使，让；present 赠予，提交；refuse 拒绝。
14. B (17岁的)她刚刚开始理解这个世界。根据句意可知B项正确。Suggest “建议”，后面不接动词不定式，可排除；pretend 假装；wait 等待，等候。
15. A 并且她相信她的亲身经历可能就是真理。根据句意可知A项正确。believe 相信；doubt 怀疑；prove 证明，证实；explain 解释。
16. D growth 生长，成长；strength 力气，优点；faith 忠诚，忠实；truth 事实，真理。根据句意应选D项。
17. C 由上文可知，教授说那是错误的，故说“it was wrong, firm 坚定的，牢固的；interesting 有趣的；wrong 错误的；acceptable 可接受的。
18. B 他(教授)只说那是错误的，而没有告诉她其他去了解世界的方法，也就是说教授把她唯一了解世界的方法(tool, 即 first-hand experience) 给否定了，却未提供给她了解世界的其他方法，tool 除有“工具”的含义外，还有“方法”之意，故选B。task 任务；success 成功；connection 联系。
19. C 由上文可知，女孩应感到渺小，(由于迷茫而)害怕。cruel 残酷的；proud 自豪的；frightened 惊吓的，害怕的；brave 勇敢的。
20. A 当时女孩做了唯一能做的事：当天下午就放弃了科学课，从此再也没有走近科学。drop- 放弃，终止；start 开始；pass 通过，推移，消磨，打发；miss 错过，想念。

cloze 3

- [语篇解读] 本文作者讲述了自己的 一次经历, 由于写作的需要, 要周游欧洲三个月, 由于作者对欧洲的地理和语言并不熟悉, 作者一开始非常担心, 甚至有放弃这次机会的念头, 但最终还是决定前往。这一次经历使得作者受益匪浅, 从此以后作者勇于接受各种挑战并且变得更为自信。
36. B 我已经出国好几次了, go abroad 出国, 与上文有机会周游欧洲三个月形成上下文对照, go abroad 上车, 上船等; go away 离开; go out 出去, 都不合文意。
37. A 我不敢宣称我知道周游欧洲大陆的线路, claim 声称, declare 宣布; hope 希望; deny 否认。
38. D 另外, 我的外语知识仅局限于一点点大学法语, more over 另外, 与前句是递进关系; somehow 不知何故; however 然而; instead 相反。
39. C be limited to 局限于, 是固定结构, be accustomed to 习惯于; be added to 被加到……; be suited to 适合于。
40. B 我犹豫了, hesitate 犹豫, 根据后文可知作者有很多的顾虑, 因此非常犹豫, resign 辞职, 放弃; tremble 颤抖; suspect 怀疑。
41. D 不会说该国的语言, 对当地的地理或者交通系统一点都不熟悉, 我怎么能够去采访和进行研究呢? far from familiar with “远远不熟悉……”是固定用法, Only too 仅仅太……; more than 非常; apart from 远离。
42. C do research 进行研究, 作者去欧洲的目的是有作业要写的, 因此得去采访和进行研究, Operation 手术; experiment 实验; business 生意, 都不合题意。
43. A 带着很大的遗憾, 我坐下来写信, 根据下文可知, 作者写信的目的是拒绝这次派遣, 这是一个非常遗憾的事情, regret 遗憾, 符合文义; doubt 怀疑; terror 恐怖; disappointment 失望。
44. D 经过反复思考作者决定写信拒绝这次任务, assignment 任务, 与前文呼应, request 请求; job 工作; trust 信任。
45. B 写到一半的时候, 一个想法突然在我脑海里闪过, thought 想法, 念头, 符合句意, reaction 反应; meaning 意义; conflict 冲突。
46. C 最后作者还是接受了这个任务, accept 接受, accomplish 完成; receive 收到; resist 抵制, 都不合题意。
47. D 周游过程中还有些不好的经历, experience 经历; exchange 交换; condition 条件, 状况; trip 旅途。
48. A 自那以后, 我再也不犹豫了, 哪怕是去最为偏远的地方, remote 偏远的; accessible 可使用的; interesting 有趣的; crowded 拥挤的。
49. C 没有向导甚至没有预定, even 甚至, 表意义递进, still 仍然; ever 曾经; yet 然而。
50. B 相信自己不管怎么样都能应付得了的, manage 能应付, 符合句意, I will do 只能表示我会做某事, 而不能表示我能行; make 应该说 I will make it, fit 适合, 合身。
51. B 新的东西, 不同的东西按理都是让人感到恐惧的, frightening 令人恐惧的, 符合句意; astonishing 令人惊讶的; fascinating 迷人的; exciting 令人兴奋的。
52. C 随着所学的东西的积累, 一个世界就会为你打开大门, pile up 积累, come up 临近, 上前; show up 出现; step up 加速。
53. D 我 40 岁学会滑雪, 乘坐气球飞越莱茵河, 根据剧中 flow up 飞越, 可知作者是乘坐气球。
54. D 我接受担心, 并把担心当作挑战的代名词……, 根据前文所提内容可知, 作者勇于接受挑战, 尽管一开始非常担心, 因此选择 challenge。
55. A 我相信我能创造奇迹, work wonders 相当于 do wonders, 意为“创造奇迹”, 其余搭配意义不当。

• claim, declar 的区别

claim 是声称; 要求; 索赔, 常与 for 连用

declar 是宣称; 宣布; 断言, 通常政府宣布独立, 战争用语。



• make 让 永成功, 做成某事

七、主题四 阅读理解

一、大纲完全解读

阅读理解是历年高考英语的必考题型，也是所有英语考试中元老级的存在，通常在整个试卷中占最大比例。江苏高考卷中，阅读理解共30分，15题，每题2分，是整张试卷中分值比最大的一类题目。

阅读理解的命题特点有3个：

1) 选材贴近生活，于法多样。

从选材上看，题材多为简易的英语文学作品、科普文章、广告、说明、传记、报纸杂志中关于一般性话题的简短文章并回答相关问题。文章内容贴近生活，非常现代，重视实用，特别强调时代气息；重视语言文化背景，所涉及的内容非常广泛，有广知识性、趣味性。

2) 词汇量基本相对独立。

高考要求掌握的词汇量为3500个单词，短文词量和试题词量之和大约在2000~2200，生词量不超过3%，且部分生词会有中文标注，因此，只要背好高考的规范词汇，阅读中生词部分不会有太大问题。（阅读不需要看懂每个单词每句话，能明白主要意思，能做题就可以）

3) 所选短文多是外国人写的反映外国事物的内容，文章结构严谨，逻辑性强，原汁原味。

4) 问题设置科学合理，检测重点放在考查考生获取信息、解决问题的语言运用能力上。

二、考纲要求

根据考纲的规定，阅读理解中学生需掌握的技能有：

1) 理解文中具体细节信息；

2) 理解段落主旨大意；

3) 根据文中事实和线索作出简单判断和推理。

4) 理解文章的基本结构和文脉逻辑关系；



5) 根据上下文提供的线索推测生词的词义

6) 理解作者的观点、意图、态度。

1) 根据所读, 用恰当的词语补全文章提纲, 概括关键内容, 词语转换;

★要做到以上, 必须学会两种阅读技巧

1) 略读文章, 获取文章大意.

2) 查读文章, 获取特定信息.

对应以上两掌握的技能, 高考英语中设置了以下几类题型:

1) 细节理解题

2) 主旨大意题

3) 推理判断题

4) 词义理解题

5) 观点态度题.

二. 解题方略

[应试小说]

每个人做阅读题的方式都不一样, 有的人效率高, 有的人效率低, 最主要还是找到适合自己的方式, 将其变型为一种模式, 然后在每次都按照该模式定时进行训练, 不断提高自己的速度和熟练度。下面我就介绍一种比较快捷的阅读法, 甚至阅读时摸不着路的同学可以参考一下~

第一步: 问题先行, 划出关键词

拿到一篇阅读, 首先看题目, 用扫读的方式将题干看一遍, 不需要做到完全记忆, 这样时间来不及, 只要做到大概有印象, 文章可能是讲什么, 带着疑惑再去读文章。

看问题不是先眼睛看, 手也要动起来, 将题干中的关键词划出来, 一般需要划出的关键词有:

1) 时间、年份. 如 in 1998s; first; second.....

2) 大写的单词. 如人名、地名、俱乐部名称、组织和机构等, 并且在读题上方用缩写的大写字母表示, 如要阅读及定位, 如将 Military Medal 缩写为 MM.



将 Frederic Joliot 缩写为 FJ.

3) 表逻辑关系的词 如 because, so, before, after ..., reason.

4) 中心词. 一个问题中的中心词.

如: 1. Mrs. Patrick was laughing quibly because she thought _____.

中心词是 ↑

(2011. 浙江. D)

2. What was a new use for wind power in the late 19th century?

中心词 ↑

(2011. 安徽. B)

5) 否定词. 如 avoid, not, negative

下面, 我们来练习一下下列关键词.

1. What is the dish Jajeh Kabob mainly made of?

(2011. 湖南. A)

2. Which of the following can describe Yeats's family?

(2011. 重庆. D)

3. Where is the nearest parking place to Shakespeare's Birthplace? (2010. 全国. A)

4. Before Parbati studied in a boarding school, _____.

(2010. 上海. A)

5. An exchange student staying at QUT for five days has to travel between zones every day. What type of ticket would he probably buy?

(2009. 江苏. C)

6. The customer comments on the battery are mainly about its _____.

(2009. 湖南. B)

7. To avoid the bad result of imitation, we should _____.

(2011. 天津. D)



8 答案区 8

1. JK, made of

2. describe, Y

3. Parking place, GB

4. before, boarding school

5. five days, every day

6. comment on

7. avoid, bad result

第二步 细读首段, 了解大意.

扫完题干后, 迅速将眼球定位首段, 细读, 了解文章大意, 有时首段很短, 只有几句话, 那再灵活看看第二段, 若首段很长, 重读第一句和最后一句, 尽量细读快速, 务必要了解大意, 这是最通全文的关键.

第三步 逐题找答案

削首段读后, 结合刚才扫过的题目, 文章的大概就清楚, 此时要重新回归题目, 一题一题找答案, 一般, 题目的设置都是按文章的段落顺序的, 主旨题除外.

根据刚才题干中划出的关键词, 快速重读一遍, 这次要做到记忆住题目和关键词, 然后开始在文章中进行定位.

定位时采用精读略读相结合的方法.

精读: 文章首尾段, 每段首尾句.

* 转折词: but, however ...

时间: in 1985 ...

最高级, 序数词: the most, first ...

比较词: more than, less than, * different from ...

否定词: not, avoid, negative, never, without, ...



某些连接词: only, once, not ... but ...

略读: 举例子: for example 后面不用读

冒句: → 表示解释说明, 除非看不懂前面的意思, 否则一般可略读过去

破折号: —— 同冒号, 后面不用读

段落中间句: 略读

插入语: 不用读 即“逗号与逗号”中间的

引用的话.

下面, 我们来练习一下如何通读全文.

We know the famous ones—the Thomas Edisons and the Alexander Graham Bells—but what about the less famous inventors? What about the people who invented the traffic light and the windshield wiper (雨刮器)? Shouldn't we know who they are?

(2011. 江苏. A)

§1. 细读

关键词: famous ones

but, less

should

shouldn't we know who they are?

Joan McLean thinks so. In fact, McLean, a professor of physics at Mountain University in Range, feels so strongly about this matter that she's developed a course on the topic. In addition to learning "who" invented "what", however, McLean also likes her students to learn the answers to the "why" and "how" questions, according to McLean. "When students learn the answers to these questions, they are better prepared to recognize opportunities for inventing and more motivated to give inventing a try."

通过读第一段, 知道本文应该是关于那些 less famous inventors.

§2. 略读

关键词: JM √ (疑问)

who & what

why & how

Her students agree. One young man with a patent for an unbreakable umbrella is walking proof of McLean's statement. "If I had not heard the story of the windshield wiper's invention," said Tommy Lee, a senior physics major. "I never would have dreamed of turning my bad experience during a rainstorm into something so constructive." Lee is currently negotiating to sell his patent to an umbrella producer.

§3. 略读

关键词: students √ (疑问)

Lee, patent.

So, just what is the story behind the windshield wiper? Well, Mary Anderson came up with the idea in 1902 after a visit to New York City. The day was cold and stormy, but Anderson still wanted to see the sights, so she jumped aboard a streetcar. Noticing that the driver was struggling to see through the snow covering the windshield, she found herself wondering why there couldn't be a built-in device for cleaning the window. Still wondering about this when she returned home to Birmingham, Alabama, Anderson started drafting out solutions. One of her ideas, a lever (操作杆) on the inside of a vehicle that would control an arm on the outside, became the first windshield wiper.

§4. 略读

关键词: MA, 1902, but, first

Today we benefit from countless inventions and innovations. It's hard to imagine driving without Garrett A. Morgan's traffic light.

§5. 细读

关键词: without. 整体意思是离不开那些发明

三. 考题分析与高分技巧

刚才讲了如何阅读一篇文章,下面就要具体分析每一种问题的如何解答,如何在文中找到答案。

1. 细节题

细节题的提问方式灵活多变,涉及短文的各种具体细节,如时间、地点、原因、结果方式等。这类题的一个共同特点是答案一般都能在文章中直接找到。但有时出题人为了增加题目的难度,会有意避开文中所用词汇,而用这些词的同义词。在这种情况下,要依据题目涉及的细节,定位文中相关出处,再对比选项回答。

常见的提问方式有:

- 1) Which of the following is true / false / mentioned?
- 2) What does the writer pay the least attention to?
- 3) Choose the right order of the events given in the passage.
- 4) All of the following statements may be true / false except ...
- 5) Which of the following is not the result of ...?
- 6) Which of the following best characterizes the main feature of ...?
- 7) Which of the following maps / diagrams gives the right position of ... / relationship of ...?
- 8) Which of the following maps shows the right way to get to ...?
- 9) Which of the drawings below gives an idea of what ... is like?
- 10) What do we know about?
- 11) What does the author mention?
- 12) According the passage, the writer ...



* 还有的考题中含有表唯一概念的词: the most ..., the only ...

命题规律

1) 列举处常考

列举处指的是 First, Second, Third 等并列关系词出现的地方。要求从列举的内容中找出符合题目要求的答案项。列举有时不用数字排序,而是采用句式排比的方式。常用的是用分号 (;) 连接的句子。

(2011·天津·B)

Then I got married with another dream: building my family with a combination of adopted and biological children. In 1999, we adopted our first son. To lay eyes on him was fantastic—and very emotional. A year later came our second adopted boy. Then followed son No. 3. In 2003, I gave birth to another boy.

2) 举例和比喻处常考

为了使自己的观点更具说服力,更加明确,作者常以具体的例子或比喻来论证。这些例子或比喻会成为考点,因此考生应注意那些引出例子或比喻的标志词,这类词很多,常见的有:

as, such as, for example, for instance, a case in point 等。

(2011·江西·A)

"Mum, what does it mean when someone tells you that they have a skeleton (骨骼) in the closet (衣橱)?" Jessica asked. "A skeleton in the closet?" her mother paused thoughtfully. "Well, it's something that you would rather not have anyone else know about. For example, if in the past, someone in Dad's family had been arrested for stealing a horse, it would be a skeleton in his family's closet. He really wouldn't want any neighbor to know about it."

1. According to Jessica's mother, "a skeleton in the closet" means _____.

- A. a family honor B. a family secret
C. a family story D. a family treasure



提示:根据第一段所举例子可以看出。

3) (指示)代词出现处常考。这类题常用来考查考生是否真正理解上下文之间的关系和意义。

4) 引用人物论断处常考。作者为表达自己的观点或使论点更有说服力,将会利用某些权威人士的论断或重要发现等,命题者喜欢在这些地方做文章。

5) 特殊标点符号后的内容常考。

特殊标点符号后的内容往往是对前面内容进一步的解释、说明,因此命题者常对这些标点符号后的内容进行提问。

这些特殊符号包括:破折号、括号、冒号、引号。

*前面在阅读文章的技巧中说过,在浏览文章时,这些特殊符号后的内容是可以略过不读的。只有在题干中提到相关细节时,我们再回到文中去细读,这样做节省很多时间。

高分技巧

1) 若针对举例,引用别人言论、特殊标点符号后的内容出题,考生可直接例子、别人名言、特殊标点符号前后句的内容,然后与选项对照入座。秒不看卷,看卷容易错。

2) 如果题目只是针对某一段的内容提问,且答题时间已不充裕,考生只看该段内容即可答题,而不必把所有看卷再做。

3) 选项中照抄原文的一般不是答案,因为会有一些地方做了手脚,而同义词替换的选项是答案的可能性高。对于两个都有些对,又难以决定的选项,更贴近原文的,越像越好。



4) 选项中意思表达越具体或肤浅的一般不是答案,而概括性的、抽象的、含义深刻的一般是答案。越大不选小。

5) 选项内容与其他三项有较大差别的可能为答案。选异不选同。

6) 选项中有绝对语气的词 98% 不是答案。

这些语气词有:

must, always, never, the most, all, merely, only, have to, any, no, completely, none, hardly 等。

而选项中含有不肯定语气的词很大可能是答案。

这些语气词有:

Could, may, often, should, usually, might, most, more or less, relatively, be likely to, possible, not necessarily 等。

7) 尤其在议论文中,那些符合一般常识的选项,以及意义深刻富有哲理,符合一般性规律、属于普遍现象的选项往往是答案。

8) 细节题干扰特点:

* 与原文内容相反

* 与原文内容一半相同一半不同

* 与原文内容相似但过于绝对

* 原文中根本没有提到。

以上四种干扰选项经常出现,由于在时间紧张的情况下,容易出错,头一晕,就会选错,一定要注意!

9) 做事实细节题要用原文定位法。



根据题干中的关键词,找有相关句、段的内容,再仔细对照,不符合原文意义的选项首先要排除,反之,则是正确选项。

1. 是非判断题。这类题的选项有两种形式。四项中有三对一错或三错一对。四项内容通常是对同一问题进行判断或对不同问题进行判断。不管什么形式，什么内容，通常都用原文定位法，把选项内容与原文内容进行分析对比，判断是否符合相关句的意义或在原文提到过，然后进行排除解答。

2. 例证题考查的是文章的逻辑结构。原文的结构通常采用“论点—例证”或“例证—论点”的形式。举例是为了说明一定的道理，在所举例子的前面或后面通常出现一句总结说明性的文字，该句就是答案，但要注意还有的例子是为了例证文章主题，有的是为了例证段落主题，这两种在结构上很明显。选择答案时当然是选择能概括文章主题或段落主题的选项，对选项内容要特别注意，命题者常把事例本身内容设置为选项，但他们不符合题干的要求，所以，选择时要首先被排除。

3. 关于对年代和数字的考查通常分为两类：直接考查和计算考查。对前者根据文中的信息能很容易地确定答案；对于后者，首先要弄清题干问的是什么；然后找到与它相关的年代和数字，对它们进一步分析，整合；最后结合题干计算出正确答案。

4. 对于最后一种常见题型，有两种考查形式：考查直接信息和对直接信息的理解。对直接信息的考查只要找到原文信息就能解决问题。后者则需要对原文相关信息做正确理解，这个理解可能牵扯到对某一句话或某些句子的理解。考生在理解其意义时，一定要捕捉到关键性的信息词。对这类题要认真，周全地考虑方能选取正确答案。这种题的正确选项往往是原文意思的不同形式。干扰项常是以下几种情况：选项本身正确，但不符合题干要求；选项本身错误或原文根本没提到；选项中含有原文信息，但其中个别词描述得不准确，这种干扰性最强，考生在答题时要十分注意。

学完了这些解决细节题的技巧就让我们赶快来体验一下做题吧！
要把我们所讲的方式融会贯通喔！

三、真题再现

1. (2011·辽宁)



About 21,000 young people in 17 American states do not attend classes in school buildings. Instead, they receive their elementary and high school education by working at home on computers. The center for Education Reform says the United States has 67 public "cyberschools" and that is about twice as many as two years ago.

The money for students to attend a cyberschool comes from the governments of the states where they live. Some educators say cyberschools receive money that should support traditional public schools. They also say it is difficult to know if students are learning well.

Other educators praise this new form of education for letting students work at their own speed. These people say cyberschools help students who were unhappy or unsuccessful in traditional schools. They say learning at home by computer ends long bus rides for children who live far from school.

Whatever the judgment of cyberschools, they are getting more and more popular. For example, a new cyberschool called Commonwealth Connections Academy will take in students this fall. It will serve children in the state of Pennsylvania from ages five through thirteen.

Children get free equipment for their online education. This includes a computer, a printer, books and technical services. Parents and students talk with teachers by telephone or by sending emails through their computers when necessary.

Students at cyberschools usually do not know one another. But 56 such students finished studies at Western Pennsylvania Cyber Charter School recently met for the first time. They were guests of honour at their graduation.

59. What do we know from the text about students of a cyberschool?

- A. They have to take long bus rides to school.
- B. They study at home rather than in classrooms.
- C. They receive money from traditional public schools.
- D. They do well in traditional school programs.

60. What is a problem with cyberschools?

- A. Their equipment costs a lot of money.
- B. They get little support from the state government.
- C. It is hard to know students' progress in learning.
- D. The students find it hard to make friends.

61. Cyberschools are getting popular because _____.

- A. they are less expensive for students
- B. their students can work at their own speed.

① 第一步, 看题干, 划重点。

② 第二步, 读文章

③ 1. 很多学生现在在家接受初等教育。

目前美国有 67 所公立 "cyberschool"。

③ 2. cyberschool 的钱由当地政府支持。

他们不知道学生学的如何上 (因为看不见)

③ 3. 其他人赞成表扬心 ⇒ own speed.

③ 4. more and more popular

例子可稍不看

③ 5. free equipment

include 后面不看

③ 6. 学生互不认识, 但是... 第一次见面了。

② 做题, 定位。

(答案见后一页)

8 答案区 8

59. B 细节理解题。根据第一段的第二句话...by working at home on computers 可知 B 项正确。根据第三段的最后一句话 They say learning at home by computer ends long bus rides for children who live far from school. 可知 A 项错误；根据第二段的第一句话 The money for students to attend a cyberschool comes from the governments of the states where they live. 可知 C 项错误；根据第三段的第二句话 These people say cyberschools help students who were unhappy or unsuccessful in traditional schools. 可知 D 项错误。

我们在阅读中重读的信息均都标到点。

第一题是对句的理解

第二题是对句的理解，我们已列出的

should, difficult 可轻松解决

第三段 praise... for 可用答案三题。

而我们略过的 54 的例子并没查

60. C 细节理解题。从第二段的最后一句话 They also say it is difficult to know if students are learning well. 可知 C 项正确。

61. B 细节理解题。根据第三段的第一句话 Other educators praise this new form of education for letting students work at their own speed. 可知 B 项正确。

2. (2011·全国 I·C)

While small may be beautiful, tall is just plain uncomfortable it seems, particularly when it comes to staying in hotels and eating in restaurants.

第二题读文解

51. 高个子在 hotel 和 restaurant 中不舒服

The Tall Persons Club Great Britain (TPCGB), which was formed six months ago to campaign for the needs of the tall, has turned its attention to hotels and restaurants. Beds that are too small, showed heads that are too low, and restaurant tables with hardly any leg-room all make life difficult for those of above average height, it says.

52. TPCGB 发起运动 ^{目的} of the tall meet the needs

But it is not just the extra-tall whose needs are not being met. The average height of the population has been increasing yet the standard size of beds, doorways, and chairs has remained unchanged.

53. But 不仅 tall 和 average 身高的人也面临这样的问题。

"The bedding industry says a bed should be six inches larger than the person using it, so even a king-size bed at 6'6" (6 feet and 6 inches) is falling short for 25% of men, while the standard 6'3" bed caters for less than half of the male population," said TPCGB president Phil Heinrich. "seven-foot beds would work fine."

54. 举例子 → PH. said

引出 seven-foot 才有用

Similarly, restaurant tables can cause no end of problems. Small tables, which mean the long-legged have to sit a foot or so away from them, are enough to make tall customers go elsewhere.

55. 又 → small tables

Some have already taken note, however. At Queens Moat Houses' Caledonian Hotel in Edinburgh, 6'6" beds are now put in

56. QMHC Hotel in E. 6'6" ✓

1. What is the purpose of the TPCGB campaign?
 A. To provide better services.
 B. To rebuild hotels and restaurants.
 C. To draw public attention to the needs of the tall.
 D. To attract more people to become its members.
2. Which of the following might be a bed of proper length according to Phil Heinrich?
 A. 7'2" B. 7' C. 6'6" D. 6'3"
3. What may happen to restaurants with small tables?
 A. They may lose some customers.
 B. They may start businesses elsewhere.
 C. They have to find easy chairs to match the tables.
 D. They have to provide enough space for the long-legged.
4. What change has already been made in a hotel in Edinburgh?
 A. Tall people pay more for larger beds.
 B. 6'6" beds have taken the place of 6'3" beds.
 C. Special rooms are kept for Americans.
 D. Guest rooms are standardized.

第一题,看题目,划重点.

第一题,用TPCGB定位于文中第2.

题目问目的,定位于 for the needs...

故选C.

第二题 in PH. bed 定位于4

可知 T 是 proper, 选 B.

第三题 in restaurant, small tables

定位于5

可知会 make tall customers go

elsewhere. 赶走高个子, 故选 A.

8 答案区 8

[语篇解读] 本文为议论文。作者通过简述 TPCGB 俱乐部的目的, 运用具体数字, 提出当今高个子人在宾馆、饭店遇到的尴尬事, 意在引起全社会对高个子公民的关注。

1. C 事实细节题。由文中第二段第一句的 to campaign for the needs of the tall 可知此俱乐部的目的为 C 项。
2. B 事实细节题。第四段最后一句: 七英尺的床最合适。故答案为 B 项。
3. A 事实细节题。根据第五段可知饭店里的小桌子足以把高个子顾客赶到别出去。
4. B 事实细节题。根据最后一段最后一句话可知在 Edinburgh 已安放 6'6" 的床作为标准床。

第四题, 用 hotel in E. changes

定位于6. 6'6" 作为 standard.

选 C.

要用所教的方法迅速看一遍文章, 再做题时就可以得心应手, 轻松过关。



3. (2011·浙江·B)



Attractions

Do you:

- ◆ Love the National Park, value it and hope to safeguard its future?
- ◆ Wish to see the beautiful landscape of the Park protected?
- ◆ Like to enjoy peaceful, informal recreation within the Park?

Aims

The Friends organization aims are to help protect and improve the Pembrokeshire Coast National Park for all to enjoy. We are a voluntary organization and registered charity without financial links to the National Park Authority.

Activities

We encourage everyone to enjoy the National Park through regular talks and visits to interesting places in the Park with expert guides.

We keep an eye on planning applications, Park Authority policies and threats to the National Park such as massive leisure complexes. We work with like-minded organizations such as the Campaign for National Parks to make our voice more effective.

We help children to understand the National Park by sponsoring publications such as an adventure booklet and projects in local schools.

Benefits

- ◆ Guided visits to places of interest which may not always be available to the general public.
- ◆ All members receive our regular News and Views.
- ◆ Talks by experts in their fields on current issues.
- ◆ A discount is available on Friends items for sale.
- ◆ Satisfaction of participation in work parties, for those willing and able to be involved.

If interested, please complete the Application Form at www.fpnp.org.uk.

1. Which of the following is discouraged by the Friends organization?

- A. To build massive complexes for public amusement.
- B. To prevent possible damages to the National Park.
- C. To help protect and improve the Park for all to enjoy.
- D. To sponsor publications and projects in local school.

第一步,看题目划重点.

第二步,读文章.

首先注意到这篇文章已分为4个小标题,通常这样的文章每个标题会出口或1个题目,并按顺序,所以定位难度大大降低,难点会设在细节分序上,有利于找项.

一.这样的文章先看小标题

Attractions

Aims

Activities

Benefits

二.直接看题目定位.

第一题问 F.org → discourage 阻止,不鼓励

扫视后定位到 Activities,只有 B 中有名词

keep an eye on ... threats ... such as

massive leisure complexes, 显然是要

discourage 的,若不放心,可用排除法.

B. C 由 Aims 得知, D 由 Activities 上得知.

(此题题 涉及各个小标题内容,较难定位,建议

先用题干阅读,或逐个选项排除)

第二步由 benefits 定位于最后一个标题.

B. 广告类 B

【语篇解读】 本文为应用文, 是一个志愿组织的招募广告, 介绍了该组织的吸引人之处, 目的、活动以及加入该组织的益处。

1. A 事实细节题。由 Activities 部分第二段的 We keep an eye on planning applications, Park Authority policies and threats to the National Park such as massive leisure complexes. 可知, 该组织把大量复杂的公众娱乐活动看做对国家公园的威胁, 并时刻进行关注。因此这是该组织做的事情。B 项和 C 项可由 Aims 部分得知; D 项可由 Activities 部分最后一段得知。
2. C 事实细节题。根据 Benefits 部分的最后一点可知, 该组织成员如果愿意, 可参加一些工作聚会。故答案为 C 项。A 项可根据第四点中的 discount 排除; B 项可根据第一点中...not always be available to the general public 排除; D 项可由第三点中的...by experts...排除。

A. (2011·江苏·C)

According to the US government, wind farms off the Pacific coast could produce 900 gigawatts of electricity every year. Unfortunately, the water there is far too deep for even the tallest windmills (see picture) to touch bottom. An experiment under way off the coast of Norway, however, could help put them anywhere.

The project, called Hywind, is the world's first large-scale deepwater wind turbine (涡轮发电机). Although it uses a fairly standard 152-ton, 2.3-megawatt turbine, Hywind represents totally new technology. The turbine will be fixed 213 feet above the water on a floating spar (see picture), a technology Hywind's creator, the Norwegian company StatoilHydro, has developed recently. The steel spar, which is filled with stones and goes 328 feet below the sea surface, will be tied to the ocean floor by three cables (缆索); these will keep the spar stable and prevent the turbine from moving up and down in the waves. Hywind's stability (稳定性) in the cold and rough sea would prove that even the deepest corners of the ocean are suitable for wind power. If all goes according to plan, the turbine will start producing electricity six miles off the coast of southwestern Norway as early as September.



Tech to Watch: Deepwater Windmills

To produce electricity on a large scale, a commercial wind farm will have to use bigger turbines than Hywind does, but it's difficult enough to balance such a large turbine so high on a floating spar in the middle of the ocean. To make that turbine heavier, the whole spar's centre of gravity must be moved much closer to the ocean's surface.

第二步: 读文章

51. Pacific water 能 produce, 但难运
an equipment could help.

52. (Although 后可略读, 逗号后是重点)

Hywind → first turbine

→ new technology

→ creator SH, spar

→ 皆可略读

→ start producing 9A

53. to → large, bigger turbines

to → heavier, closer

To do that, the company plans to design a new kind of wind turbine, one whose gearbox (变速箱) sits at sea level rather than to 做到以上的 → new turbine behind the blades (see picture).

Hywind is a test run, but the benefits for perfecting floating wind-farm technology could be extremely large. Out at sea, the wind is often stronger and steadier than close to shore where all existing offshore windmills are planted. Deep-sea farms are invisible from land, which helps overcome the windmill-as-eyesore objection. If the technology catches on, it will open up vast areas of the planet's surface to one of the best low-carbon power sources available.

54. test, but large benefits
if catch on, 打开了新的领域

1. The Hywind project uses totally new technology to ensure the stability of _____.

- A. the cables which tie the spar to the ocean floor
B. the spar which is floating in deep-sea water
C. the blades driven by strong and steady sea wind
D. the stones filled in the spar below the sea surface

2. To balance a bigger turbine high on a floating spar, a new type of turbine is to be designed with its gearbox sitting _____.

- A. on the sea floor B. on the spar top
C. at sea level D. behind the blades

第一步, 看题目, 划重点

刚才读文时没提到 stability, 可能在
我们略读的那段, 果然, 迅速找到该
单词的 stability, 然后成功开始做题.

发现 keep the spar stable and ...

是为了解决柱子的稳定, 选 B.

第二步由 a new type of 然后到

标题上面一句, sit at sea level.

目 录 案 正 目

[语篇解读] 本文是一篇科普说明文。众所周知, 风能是一种清洁能源, 可用于发电。太平洋沿岸的风力发电厂每年可发 900 亿瓦特的电量就是最好的例证。然而不幸的是, 如此庞大的风力发电厂也遇到了比较现实的问题: 由于水太深, 即使是最高风车也无法触到底。那么如何解决这一难题呢? 研制一个世界大规模深水发电机计划也就应运而生了。本文介绍了这种发电机的作用及其实用价值。

1. B 事实细节题。由文章第二段信息句 The steel spar, which is filled with stones and goes 328 feet below the sea surface, will be tied to the ocean floor by three cables; these will keep the spar stable and prevent the turbine from moving up and down in the waves. 可知, Hywind 工程完全运用新技术其目的就是为了确保漂流在深水海洋中柱子的稳定性。故选 B。

2. C 事实细节题。由第三段信息句 To do that, the company plans to design a new kind of wind turbine, one whose gearbox sits at sea level rather than behind the blades. 可知, 本题答案应选 C。



2. 主旨题

主要测试大家对整篇文章的理解能力。解答主旨题，最有效的办法是找到并仔细研读该文的主题句。主题句多数情况下出现在比较重要的位置，如文章的开头或结尾，如一篇文章包括各个段落，一般来说每个自然段的首句也是本段的主题句。文章主题句之外的其他内容一般都是对主题句的解释、补充说明或列举事实进行佐证等。另外，有些阅读材料的主题思想不是十分明确，需阅读原文全文，抓住主要论点或论题来归纳中心思想。

应注意的足，归纳中心思想时，要从原文实际内容出发，在事实依据的基础上进行判断、推理和归纳。

依据问题内容的不同，这类问题可分为主题型、标题型、目的型。

① 主题型：找中心思想。 → main idea

② 标题型：选文章标题。 → title

③ 目的题：推断作者写作意图。 → purpose

提问方式：

- What is the main idea / subject of the passage?
- What does this passage mainly / primarily concern?
- The main theme ^{point} of this passage is _____.
- Which of the following is the best title for the passage?
- The title that best expresses the theme of the passage is _____.
- Which of the following best describes the passage as a whole?
- The purpose of the writer in writing this passage is to _____.
- From the passage we can conclude / learn that ...
- The passage mainly discusses ...



命题规律

1) 段首、段尾常考。

一般，短文中第一段首句或末段末句往往是文章中心思想的表达处；有时一段的段首、段尾句是该段的主题句。因此，命题者常常在这些地方出题。

2) 特殊标点符号 (尤其是首段的特殊标点符号) 之后的内容。

往往表达了作者的观点，阐述了全文主题。

3) 语义转折处 (尤其是首段的语义转折处) 常考

转折后所跟内容往往是作者真实的写作目的或基本观点，而这很有可能就是文章的中心思想。

A) 因果句常考

因果句也可表现出作者的目的、观点、文章的主题，因此成为考点。

表因果关系的词有: because, since, for, as, therefore, consequently, result in, originate from 等。

有时作者也通过先提出问题 (why...?) 而后给予回答的方式来阐释文章主题。

高分技巧

1) 在时间有限的情况下，只读首尾段，答案很有可能就在这些段落中。

2) 阅读时，注意出现频率高的单词，这些词可能就是蕴含中心思想的关键词。这些关键词可能是同一词多次出现，也可能是同一类词贯穿全文。



3) 单从选项内容上看，那些概括全文、内容全面、含义深刻、说明道理的题目一般是答案，而内容片面、单一的题目应排除。

4) 主旨题干扰项的特点:

• 只是局部信息,或是一句没有展开论述的话,或某一段的主要内容。

• 概括范围太宽,把文章内容过于一般化,包含的内容超出文章阐述的内容,或是此题缺乏具体的内容。

• 无中生有,即在文章中未提到或找不到依据的信息。

* 主题句可能出现在段首、段末、段中三种情况,也可能隐含于段落中,

1. 主题句位于段首

主题句位于段首由作者先立论,后摆事实讲道理的写作手法形成的。这种手段称为演绎型段落。据有关数据表明,在英语议论文或说明文中,有60%~90%的主题句是段落的第一句。这样的段落模式可用倒三角(∇)来表示。

(1) 寻找主题句

有些段落,有明显的引出细节的信息词,常见的信息词有: for example, an example of, the most important, first, second, next, then, last, to begin with, also, besides that 等。

在阅读中,应尽量利用上述信息词确定主题句的位置。从该段落中的 for example 可以断定,第一句是主题句。如果无明显的信息词,可先假设第一句为主题句,在第二句前面添加一个 for example,看看第二句是否可以支撑第一句话,如果第二句不能支撑第一句话,便在其他地方找出主题句。

(2) 选择答案

先彻底弄懂主题句的句意,然后阅读 ABCD 四个选项,选择与主题句句意相吻合的答案,如主题句的再现,主题句句意的复述或推论等,排除与主题句句意无关的答案,如支撑细节和文章中未阐述的事实等。

2. 主题句位于句末

主题句位于句末是作者采用了先摆事实,后作结论的写作手法形成的。这种段落称为归纳型段落。这种段落的模式可用正三角(\triangle)来表示。

3. 主题句位于段落的中间

主题句偶尔也会在段落的中间,但不一定就在正中间,有时,第一句并非主题句,而是承上启下的过渡句。

在这种情况下,第二句便成了主题句。此外,主题句也可能是段落的倒数第二句。这种段落模式可用变形(\odot)来表示。这种图形可看作是 \triangle 和 ∇ 的合二为一。这种段落是从支撑细节开始,发展到结论(出现主题句)。当主题句出现后,又进一步用细节支持说明,其安排程序是:次要——主要——次要。

4. 主题句隐含在段落之中

有些段落没有明显的主题句,其中心思想包含在各个句子中,这就要求读者根据已知细节,归纳出段落的中心思想。这种段落模式可用正方形(\square)来表示。

5) 迅速准确地选择标题。有明确主题句的段落标题拟题还是:以主题句为核心,与表示概括概念的词语一起压缩为能高度概括主题句句意或中心思想的词组。

如: 1. Smoking cigarettes can be an expensive habit.



主题: Smoking cigarettes

概括概念: can be an expensive habit.

标题: The Expensive Habit of Smoking Cigarettes

2. Coffee is a universal beverage (饮料) that is served in different different ways around the world.

主题: Coffee

扩写概念: is a universal beverage that is served in different ways around world.

标题: Coffee Around the World

拟写标题, 不一定完全机械套用上述公式, 方式可以灵活多样, 然而不论采用何种方式, 有条原则应遵守: 绝对不能离开主题句所要表达的主要概念。

真题再现

Since 1984, Philadelphia has been cleaning up its act. One by one, graffiti-covered walls are being changed into outdoor art. So far, more than 1,800 murals (壁画) have been painted. Philadelphia now has more murals than any other American city.

§1. clean up its act
now,

The walls that were once ugly with graffiti (涂鸦) are now covered with beautiful pictures of historical heroes and modern art, thanks to the Mural Arts Program (MAP). Its work makes schools and public places attractive, and its citizens very proud. The program began as part of Philadelphia's Anti-Graffiti Network. Jane Golden is the MAP's artistic director. "When people ask me what our program is about," she says, "I answer them with one word: hope." Each year, the MAP offers youth art programs and workshops. Some one-time graffiti writers even help paint MAP murals.

§2. the walls ugly → beautiful
多亏了 MAP. ⇒ hope

The MAP's work, says Golden, is all about developing a sense of community (社区). When a neighborhood requests a mural, the MAP works with the people there to develop a message. Some messages have been "Safe Streets," "Love and Care," and "Peace Walk."

§3. develop a sense of community
develop a message

The MAP receives up to 50 requests for murals each week. Last year, the workers painted 140 murals.

§4. 略

"The making of a mural enters people's collective memory as a pleasant moment in neighborhood history," says

§5. 略

1. What can be the best title for the text?

- A. Love, from Graffiti Writers to Muralists
 B. MAP, a New Company in Philadelphia
 C. Jane, an Excellent Mural Artist
 D. Hope, One Wall at a Time

查无此译, 我们来看题目.

1. 问标题

可用排除法

2. What is the Mural Arts Program in Philadelphia aimed at?

- A. Helping the young find jobs.
 B. Protecting the neighborhood.
 C. Fighting against graffiti.
 D. Attracting more visitors.

A. 强调 love, 但本文强调 hope.

所以错

B. 强调 MAP 是费城一个新公司.

显然错

3. How does the MAP decide on the message for a mural?

- A. By having discussions with people in the community.
 B. By seeking advice from the city government.
 C. By learning from the young graffiti writers.
 D. By studying the history of the city.

C. 强调 Jane 是个杰出的艺术家,

也不对

D. 强调 hope, 正确.

另答案 B

第 2、3 题是事实细节题,

这里就不再各解释, 大家对照

答案看 ~

[语篇解读] 本文是一篇记叙文。文章记叙了费城人民治理、整顿城市不文明的“墙壁文化”, 使曾经狼藉一片、乱贴乱画的墙壁变成了今天的希望之墙、文明之墙和艺术之墙的故事。

1. D 主旨大意题。由文章第二段 Jane Golden is the MAP's artistic director. "When people ask me what our program is about," she says. "I answer them with one word: hope." 可知, 费城人民的愿望就是要将原来的狼藉之墙变成艺术之墙。故选 D。

2. C 事实细节题。根据文章第二段关键信息句 The program began as part of Philadelphia's Anti-Graffiti Network. 可知, 该计划的主要目标就是抵制乱涂乱画的行为。故选 C。

3. A 事实细节题。文章第三段就是本题的关键内容, 特别是根据 the MAP works with the people there to develop a message 可知, 在社区的壁画的处理上是采用民主协商的方式解决的。故选 A。



2. (2011·江苏·D)

In a world with limited land, water and other natural resources (资源), the harm from the traditional business model is on the rise. Actually, the past decades has seen more and more forests disappearing and globe becoming increasingly warm. People now realize that this unhealthy situation must be changed, and that we must be able to develop in sustainable (可持续的) ways. That means growth with low carbon or development of sustainable products. In other words, we should keep the earth healthy while using its supply of natural resources.

Today, sustainable development is a popular trend in many countries. According to a recent study, the global market for low-carbon energy will become three times bigger over the next decades. China, for example, has set its mind on leading that market, hoping to seize chances in the new round of the global energy revolution. It is now trying hard to make full use of wind and solar energy, and is spending a huge amount of money making electric cars and high-speed trains. In addition, we are also seeing great growth in the global markets for sustainable products such as palm oil (棕榈油), which is produced without cutting down valuable rainforest. In recent years the markets for sustainable products have grown by more than 50%.

Governments can fully develop the potential of these new markets. First, they can set high targets for reducing carbon emissions (排放) and targets for saving and reusing energy. Besides, stronger arrangement of public resources like forests can also help to speed up the development. Finally, governments can avoid the huge expenses that are taking us in the wrong direction, and redirecting some of those expenses can accelerate the change from traditional model to a sustainable one.

The major challenge of this century is to find ways to meet the needs of growing population within the limits of this single planet. That is no small task, but it offers abundant new chances for sustainable product industries.

5. What is the main purpose of the passage?
- A. To introduce a new business model.
B. To compare two business models.
C. To predict a change of the global market.
D. To advocate sustainable development.



B 答案 B

5. D 主旨大意题。本文先从传统的经济模式对环境造成的破坏着手, 提出在利用有限的自然资源来发展经济的同时又能破坏环境的可持续发展的话题, 故 D 项“提倡可持续发展”为本文的目的。

上1 传统经济模式对环境造成的破坏在上升, 人们认识到必须改变此种状况, 要 develop sustainable ways.

上2. sustainable development 在许各国家成为一种流行趋势, 其尾是来举例论证这个观点的, 做主旨题时不必看。

上3. Government 有充分挖掘这个新市场的潜力, 从 first, besides, finally 三方面来说明如何做, 而这个新市场就是指 sustainable development.

上4. challenge → meet needs
but chances for sustainable product industries.

全文每段都在围绕可持续发展, 因此, 本文的 main purpose 必然就是此, 答案选 D

3. (2011·广东·D)

Ireland has had a very difficult history. The problems started in the 16th century when English rulers tried to conquer (征服) Ireland. For hundreds of years, the Irish people fought against the English. Finally, in 1921, the British government was forced to give independence to the south of Ireland. The result is that today there are two "Irelands". Northern Ireland, in the north, is part of the United Kingdom. The republic of Ireland, in the south, is an independent country.

In the 1840s the main crop, potatoes was affected by disease and about 750,000 people died of hunger. This, and a shortage (短缺) of work, forced many people to leave Ireland and live in the USA, the UK, Australia and Canada. As a result of these problems, the population fell from 8.2 million in 1841 to 6.6 million in 1851.

For many years, the majority of Irish people earned their living as farmers. Today, many people still work on the land but more and more people are moving to the cities to work in factories and offices. Life in the cities is very different from life in the countryside, where things move at a quieter and slower pace.

The Irish are famous for being warm-hearted and friendly. Oscar Wilde, a famous Irish writer, once said that the Irish were "the greatest talkers since the Greeks". Since independence, Ireland has revived (复兴) its own culture of music, language, literature and singing. Different areas have different styles of old Irish songs which are sung without instruments. Other kinds of Irish music use many different instruments such as the violin, whistles, etc.

1. What does the author tell us in Paragraph 1?

- A. How the Irish fought against the English.
B. How Ireland gained independence.
C. How English rulers tried to conquer Ireland.
D. How two "Irelands" came into being.

B 答案区

1. D 主旨大意题。概括第一段可知,本段主要介绍了爱尔兰一段与众不同的历史,即在被英国统治了几百年后,北爱尔兰成为英国的一部分,而南爱尔兰则获得独立,成立了“爱尔兰共和国”。由此可以看出,本段主要介绍了“两个爱尔兰”是如何形成的。故答案为D项。

3. B 主旨大意题。概括最后一段可知,本段主要介绍了爱尔兰的文化,故答案为B项。其余选项本段虽有所提及,但都属于本段的部分内容,无法概括本段大意,故可排除。

4. C 主旨大意题。概括全文可知,本文主要从几个方面介绍了过去

B1. 讲述爱尔兰一段不同寻常的历史
也有 Ireland 如何在英国统治下
获得独立,而北爱尔兰成为英国一部分,爱尔兰两个爱尔兰是如何形成的。

B2. 由于 hunger, shortage of work
Ireland 人口剧减,流亡他国。

B3. work

以前 farmers

如今,才能保持 farmers,

越来越多的人到 cities 工作

B4. 特点: warm-hearted, friendly

复兴 → music

3. The last paragraph is mainly about

- A. the Irish character B. Irish culture
C. Irish musical instruments
D. a famous Irish writer

4. What can be the best title for the text?

- A. Life in Ireland
B. A Very Difficult History
C. Ireland, Past and Present
D. The Independence of Ireland

· 问题1是引的主旨,刚才已分析过

“两个爱尔兰是如何形成的,选D”

· 问题2是4题的主旨,CD显然片面

可能含有同义语的A,那是没有读全
段落,理解的只是 culture 占全
段多数内容。

· 问题3,纵观全文,每段都是
针对对比选C 其余选项太片面。

3. 推断题

要求大家在理解文章中直接陈述的观点或描绘的事实的基础上,领悟作者的言外之意 (implied meaning), 得出符合作者意图的结论, 即根据作者暗示的内容, 推断出合理的结论。切忌不要按自己思路来推断, 一定要顺着作者意图。主观臆断通常不会正确。

提问方式:

1) 针对文章内容结构等进行推断判断

- From the passage we can draw the conclusion that ...
- It is implied / indicated / suggested that ...
- What conclusion can be drawn from the passage?
- It can be inferred / concluded from the passage that ...
- What does the passage preceding / following this one probably discuss?
- We can infer from the paragraph that ...
- The report seems to conclude that ...
- Paragraph ... indicates that ...

2) 针对作者观点、态度、语气等进行判断推理。

(一般在说明文中, 作者的态度是客观或中立的; 而在议论文中, 作者的态度多种多样)

- What's the writer's attitude to ...?
- What's the tone (基调) of the passage?
- The author's vie is ...
- The writer's attitude of the passage is apparently _____
- How does the author feel about ...?



命题规律

• 对文章内容、结构等进行判断推理。

1) 综合性推论和判断题常会围绕全文出题,要求归纳篇首、篇尾以及各段的主题句并从中推断出全文主题。

2) 综合性推论和判断题还可围绕文章若干段落进行,要求推论和判断出段落间的关系。

3) 支持主题思想的细节部分常考。这些细节部分表现形式多样,可以是列举、例证、实验论证、人物论断等,要求考生对这部分内容进行判断推理。

4) 文章或段落开头处,以及文章结尾总结处常考。

5) 语言转折处常考

• 观点态度题的推理判断。

1) 涉及文章中心思想处常考。

文章的中心思想与作者的观点和态度是密切相关的。有时做一道观点态度题,只需要通读全文,分析作者的思想,把握文章脉络,而后就能揣摩出作者的思想 and 态度。

2) 作者提出观点处常考

这主要出现在议论文中。议论文的写作思路一般是提出观点,而后给予论证支持,最后得出与观点点相一致的结论。因此,明白作者的观点就把握了作者的基本思想和态度。



3) 语意转折或强对比处常考

作者往往在语意转折或强对比处提出文章的重点内容,表明其思想,这些自然也反映了其观点和态度,因此命题者会在此处出题。

4) 文章中的复合句、特殊句型或句式处常考。

复合句(尤其表示条件/让步的主从复合句)中常暗合作者的观点和态度,而且,特殊句型(如 not...but)或特殊句式(如强调句,反意拟语气等)也以不同于一般陈述句的方式提示考生注意所述内容的重要性,这些内容一般与作者的观点、态度有密切关系。

高分技巧

1) 若要否对某段内容进行判断、推理,那么就只看题目要求作答的那一段。

2) 选项措辞过于绝对化的,一般不是答案。

3) 合乎常理、意义深刻,或符合一般常识的选项一般是答案,而照抄原文或对原文作片面解释的则不是答案。

4) 弄清主题意思。在处理与全文主旨相关,或者与文章首尾相关的推论题时,一定要放慢速度,将各段尤其是全文首尾部分的句意读懂,再快速阅读其他部分。

5) 准备确理解作者的观点、态度寓意。

只有在语面上的含义完全理解下,才可推断作者未明确说出来的意思。

作选择时始终要遵循的一条原则是:所选答案与作者立场保持一致。



下面举几个文学作品的例子,来说明如何在阅读中作推论。

(1) ...The young man quickly answered, "Yes, sir."

从"quickly"和"Yes, sir."可以推论出,说话者似乎态度谦卑,甚至有点诚惶诚恐。

(2) "...Lots of people think I'm just a green kid(child). I'll show them."

green 原意为“绿色的”,由此引申为“不成熟的”,这里可译作“毛孩子”,从I'll Show them.“可推论出两层意思:①“许多人认为我只是个毛孩子,我要给人们做个样子让他们看看。”(表示很自信);②“许多人认为我只是个毛孩子,我要给他们^点颜色让他们看看。”(威胁的口气)

⇒ 然而再联系上下文来琢磨原作者看想表达的是何种意思。

(3) When the people finally rang, Joe leaped from the edge (边缘) of his chair and grabbed (抢;抓) for it.

在这段材料中,有几个可使人引起联想的关键词语:finally, leaped, Edge 以及 grabbed 等。“finally”这个词暗示 Joe 等电话已多时了。“leaped”和“grabbed”暗示他的紧张而迫不及待的心情。“from the edge of his chair”暗示他坐卧不安地期待着。读者从上述的关键

⇒ 在文学作品中,作者常会采用侧面描写的方式来表现

词语可以推论出作者的真实意图是说明这个电话很重要。如果作者不造成悬念,而采用直接描写的手法(如下所示),就会平铺直叙,激发不出读者的想象力,文章也就失去了感染力。

如作者要表现被晚,他不写

Joe was very nervous and anxious as he waited for an important phone. Unable to relax for a moment, he sat on the edge of his chair. When the phone rang, Joe reached for it.

现在是夜晚,而是描述大家在一起看月亮,由月亮得知现在是夜晚。

读者应该记住,推论一定要紧扣文章中提供的事实和证据,离开文章中的事实,曲解文章的事实,或对文章的事实缺乏全面的了解,都可能会做出不合理的推论。例如:

The old man staggered (摇摇晃晃地走) along the sidewalk. He Grabbed at the picket fence to keep from falling. His torn gray overcoat Swayed open in the winter wind. 粗心的读者可能会从“staggered”, “grabbed...from falling”推论出这个老头喝醉了。显然这种推论缺乏足够的证据,因为读者忽略了“His torn gray overcoat...in the winter wind”这一事实。事实上,作者描写了一幅凄凉的情景。合理的推论应该是:这个老头上了年纪,疾病交加,身体很虚弱。

⇒ 一定要有确切的依据。

6) 抓住依据

推理判断的过程应该是从A到B的过程,其中A是依据,来自于文章, B是推论



A合理科学推理的结果 因此在文中找到依据至关重要。

eg. 在文中找到 The sun is shining.

可推断出 The weather is fine.

1) 推断题干扰项的特点:

- 在文章事实或上下文逻辑基础上进行推断而得出的观点, 但与题目无关.
- 显然是以文章提供的事实或内在逻辑为基础进行推断, 但推断过于概括过度.

真题再现 (唠唠一大堆, 终于要实战演练咯, 大家打起精神!)

1. (2011·全国I·A)

When milk arrived on the doorstep

When I was a boy growing up in New Jersey in the 1960s, we had a milkman delivering milk to our doorstep. His name was Mr. Basille. He wore a white cap and drove a white truck. As a 5-year-old boy, I couldn't take my eyes off the coin changer fixed to his belt. He noticed this one day during a delivery and gave me a quarter out of his coin changer.

Of course, he delivered more than milk. There was cheese, eggs and so on. If we needed to change our order, my mother would pen a note—"Please add a bottle of buttermilk next delivery"—and place it in the box along with the empty bottles. And then, the buttermilk would magically appear.

All of this was about more than convenience. There existed a close relationship between families and their milkmen. Mr. Basille even had a key to our house, for those times when it was so cold outside that we put the box indoors, so that the milk wouldn't freeze. And I remember Mr. Basille from time to time taking a break at our kitchen table, having a cup of tea and telling stories about his delivery.

There is sadly no home milk delivery today. Big companies allowed the production of cheaper milk, thus making it difficult for milkmen to compete. Besides, milk is for sale everywhere, and it may just not have been practical to have a delivery service.

Recently, an old milk box in the countryside I saw brought back my childhood memories. I took it home and planted it on the back porch (门廊). Every so often my son's friends will ask what it is. So I start telling stories of my boyhood, and of the milkman who brought us friendship along with his milk.

1. Mr. Basille gave the boy a quarter out of his coin changer

- A. to show his magical power B. to pay for the delivery
C. to satisfy his curiosity D. to please his mother



这是篇小故事, 可以抱着读故事的心情

来阅读~ 不存在着重难点, 但结尾很重要!

1. 送奶人出场, 给我零钱

2. 订购不同品种的东西

3. 送奶人与 family 同的亲昵关系,

互相信任, 甚至有我们家钥匙

4. 4. 如今没有送奶人了.

原因有 2 点.

5. an old milk box → 回忆

体现作者无限怀旧之情.

→ 定位第一段, "m" 说明 "我" 充满

好奇心, 而送奶人给我钱是父子相见

"我的好奇心" "He noticed this"
选 C.

2. What can be inferred from the fact that the milkman had the key to the boy's house?

- A. He wanted to have tea there.
B. He was a respectable person.
C. He was treated as a family member.
D. He was fully trusted by the family.

2. → 显然 A、B 不对，可排除。

C 是一个干扰项，貌似是正确的

D 正确。

可是他有钥匙，被请进来喝茶，只

是为方便送奶，真正被当作家人，有

反是，一起吃饭或其他家宴举动，

所以 C 是过度联想了，错。

3. Why does home milk delivery no longer exist?

- A. Nobody wants to be a milkman now.
B. It has been driven out of the market.
C. Its service is getting poor.
D. It is forbidden by law.

4. Why did the author bring back home an old milk box?

- A. He missed the good old days.
B. He wanted to tell interesting stories.
C. He missed it for his milk bottles.
D. He planted flowers in it.

3. 看 24 选 B

4. 读文章时已知作者很喜欢送奶人。

怀念送奶的日子。

B 答案 B

【语篇解读】 本文为记叙文，作者使用夹叙夹议的写作手法回忆了自己小时候家人和送奶人之间的深厚友谊，表达了作者对儿时生活及送奶人的怀念。

1. C 推理判断题。根据第一段最后两句话可知我目不转睛地盯着对方的东西是出于一个五岁孩子的好奇心，而送奶人这样做是为了满足我的好奇心。后文我们彼此的信任，说明不存在送奶人为了取悦于我的母亲，故排除 D 项。

2. D 推理判断题。由第三段内容可知送奶人是被信任的人，所以可以拥有“我”家的钥匙，以方便送奶。

3. B 推理判断题。由第四段可知：第一，大公司竞争力强；第二，牛奶销售到处可见。二者足以把送奶人排挤出市场。

4. A 推理判断题。由文中字里行间可知，作者怀念儿时的时光，怀念与送奶人之间的深厚情谊，再根据最后一句：我开始讲述我儿时的故事，讲述送奶人的故事，可知作者在怀旧。



2. (2011·福建·D)

Jacqueline Bouvier Kennedy Onassis was one of the most private women in the world, yet when she went to work as an editor in the last two decades of her life, she revealed (展现) herself as she did nowhere else.

bl. JBKO → private
→ reveal herself

After the death of her second husband, Greek shipping magnate (巨头) Aristotle Onassis, Jacqueline's close friend and former White House social secretary Letitia Baldrige made a suggestion that she consider a career (职业) in publishing. After consideration, Jacqueline accepted it. Perhaps she hoped to find there some ideas about how to live her own life. She became not less but more interested in reading. For the first 20 years of her life, Jacqueline worked as a publisher's editor, first at Viking, then at Doubleday, pursuing (追求) a late-life career longer than her two marriages combined. During her time in publishing, she was responsible for managing and editing more than 100 successfully marketed books. Among the first books were *In the Russian Style* and *Inventive Paris Clothes*. She also succeeded in persuading TV hosts Bill Moyers and Joseph Campbell to transform their popular television conversation into a book, *The Power of Myth*. The book went on to become an international best-seller. She dealt, too, with Michael Jackson as he prepared his autobiography (自传), *Moonwalk*.

bl. 第二任丈夫死后, 杰奎琳在朋友
劝诱下开始担任出版社编辑,
才投身于她的许多成就。

Jacqueline may have been hired for her name and for her social relations, but she soon proved her worth. Her worth, her choices, suggestions and widespread social relations were of benefit both to the publishing since and to Jacqueline herself. In the books she selected for publication, she built on a lifetime of spending time by herself as a reader and left a record of the growth of her mind. Her books are the autobiography she never wrote. Her role as First Lady, in the end, was overshadowed by her performance as an editor. However, few knew that she had achieved so much.

bl. 杰奎琳证明了自己的价值,
她的职业生涯所取得的成就还
超过了她作为第一夫人这个角色,
然后这些鲜为人知。

1. We can learn from the passage that Jacqueline _____.

- A. because fond of reading after working as an editor
B. was in charge of publishing 100 books
C. promoted her books through social relations
D. gained a lot from her career as an editor

2. The underlined sentence in the last paragraph probably means that _____.

- A. Jacqueline ended up as an editor rather than as First Lady
B. Jacqueline's life as First Lady was more colorful than as an editor
C. Jacqueline was more successful as an editor than as First Lady
D. Jacqueline's role as First Lady was more brilliant than as an editor

3. What can be inferred from the passage?

- A. Jacqueline's two marriages lasted more than 20 years.
B. Jacqueline's own publishing firm was set up eventually
C. Jacqueline's views and beliefs were reflected in the books she edited
D. Jacqueline's achievements were widely known



B 答案 B

【语篇解读】 本文为记叙文。杰奎琳·鲍维尔·肯尼迪·奥纳西斯是世界上最神秘的女人之一，曾是美国第一夫人。在她朋友的劝说下，她决定开始职业妇女生涯。作为一个长期热爱文学和写作的她，担任了出版社的编辑。在她人生最后二十年的时光里，她展示了自我，体现了她的价值，然而极少数的人知道她所取得的伟大成就。

1. D 推理判断题。根据文章第二段最后五句话：杰奎琳在出版期间负责管理和成功编辑了许多书，且《神话的力量》和迈克尔·杰克逊的自传《月球漫步》成为畅销书排行榜的榜首，可知作为编辑，她从她的事业中获得了很多，所以正确答案为 D 项。

2. C 推理判断题。根据文章第二、三段及画线句句意：最终，作为编辑，杰奎琳出类拔萃的表现使她作为第一夫人的角色显得相形见绌，由此可知杰奎琳作为编辑比作为第一夫人更加成功。所以正确答案为 C 项。

3. C 推理判断题。根据文章第三段第二、三句可知，杰奎琳的观点和信仰反映在她所编辑的书籍里。所以正确答案为 C 项。

3. (2011·安徽·E)

George Prochnik would like the world to put a sock in it. He makes his case in a new book, *Listening for Meaning in a World of Noise*. Here he explains himself (using his indoor voice):

"We've become so accustomed to noise, there's almost a deep prejudice against the idea that silence might be beneficial. If you tell someone to be quiet, you sound like an old man. But it's never been more important to find continuing quiet. Silence focuses us, improves our health, and is a key to lasting peace and satisfaction."

"We need to excite people about the sounds you start to hear if you merely quiet things down a little. During a Japanese tea ceremony, the smallest sounds become a kind of art—the spoons making a light ringing sound on a bowl, the edges of a kimono (和服) brushing against the floor."

"Deaf people are very attentive (专注的) in almost every aspect of life. If two deaf people are walking together, using sign language, they constantly watch out for each other and protect each other by paying steady attention to the other. They are connected yet also fully aware of their surroundings. Even deaf teenagers! We in the hearing world can learn from them. If we remove the powerful blasts (一阵阵) of noise, we become aware of an extraordinarily rich world around us—of little soft sounds and the sound of footsteps, of bird songs and ice cracking (开裂声). It's astonishing how beautiful things sound when you can really listen."

51 表明 GP 的主要观点：

he would like the world to put a sock in it. → 暗示不知是何意思。
⇒ 52. 道出中心 安静的重要性。

53. 只有在安静的情况下才会欣赏到勺子、和服发出的声响。

→ 54. 用 deaf people 举例，旨在让我们静下心来关注周围丰富多彩的世界。

1. What does the phrase "to put a sock in it" in Paragraph 1 probably mean? 1. 读原文, 知道袜子是让世界安静, 选A.
- A. to be quiet B. to be colorful
- C. to be full of love D. to be attentive to someone
2. What does Prochnik say about us? 2. 看第二句话, 我们已习惯了噪音, 故A错.
- A. We are used to quietness
- B. We have to put up with noise
- C. We do not think silence to be beneficial 我们不认为安静有益, 故C对.
- D. We do not believe lasting peace to be available B, D文中并没有提到, 是过度推论.
3. Which of the following is true according to Prochnik? 3. A错, 我们需更 silence.
- A. We need more sounds in our lives B错, 从中学到许多.
- B. There is nothing to be learned from the deaf C对
- C. We are not aware how rich the world around us is D错, tea ceremony 中 spoon 和 kimono 发出的声音是一种美的语言.
- D. There is too much noise at a Japanese tea ceremony
4. It can be inferred from the text that _____.
- A. we can benefit a lot from old people
- B. it is a good idea to use sign language
- C. there is no escape from the world of sound
- D. it is possible to find how beautiful things sound

易错题区 B

[语篇解读] 本文为议论文。George Prochnik 在书中表达了自己的观点——安静的世界对我们的健康有很多好处, 没有噪音, 我们将享受到周围这个丰富多彩的世界。

1. A 推理判断题。概括全文可知, Prochnik 在书中主张消除噪音, 这对我们的健康有好处, 可以使我们专注一些美妙的声音。由此可以推断出, 他想拥有一个安静的世界。故答案为 A 项。
2. C 推理判断题。根据第二段开头可知, 我们持有很大的偏见, 反对“安静有益”的观点。由此可推断出, 我们并没有认识到安静的益处。故答案为 C 项。
3. C 推理判断题。根据最后一段可知, 只有把巨大的噪音消除掉, 我们才会注意到周围这个丰富多彩的世界。但是上文提到, 我们目前习惯了噪音, 因此我们目前没有注意到我们周围世界是多么丰富多彩。
4. D 推理判断题。根据最后一段可知, 只要消除噪音, 我们就会注意到周围这个格外丰富多彩的世界, 包括各种美妙的声音。由此可知, 这个目标是可能实现的。

4. A错, 没提到

B错, 主观臆测

C错, 绝对化

D对, 最后一段提到只要

消除噪音, 世界仍很美好。

4. 词义猜测题

在阅读英语材料这类真实语言活动的过程中,遇到生词本属正常,但我们不是每次遇到生词就一定要查词典。正确理解、掌握所读材料中单词或短语的含义是理解全文意义的基础,在阅读过程中根据语料、背景及上下文提示等线索推测出生词词义也是真实语言活动中的一项重要技巧。

此类题目在每份试题中所占比例最小,并呈递减趋势,能出1题或0题。

提问方式

- The word "... " refers to / probably means ...
- The underlined word "... " could be best replaced by ...
- What do you think the expression "... " stands for?
- By saying "... " we mean ...
- "... " as used in the passage can best be defined as ...
- Which of the following words can take the place of the ^{word} ~~word~~ "... " ?

命题规律

1. 通过上下文来推测词义

通过上下文,根据下文的语句推测词义。

Cassandra Feeley finds it hard to manage on her husband's income. So this year she did something more than a hobby: She planted vegetables in her yard. For her fist garden. Ms Feeley has put in 15 tomato plants, and five rows of a variety of vegetables. The family's old farm house has become a chicken house, its residents arriving next month. Last year, Ms Rita Gartin kept a small garden. This year she has made it much larger because, she said, "The cost of everything is going up and I was looking to lose a few pounds too: so it's a win-win situation all around."

64. What does the word "residents" in Paragraph 1 probably refer to?

- A. chickens B. tomatoes C. gardens D. people

解答: A 词义猜测题。

由文中的 The family's old farm house has become a chicken house.

its residents arriving next month.

可知:露里的旧农舍已被改成鸡舍,它的

"居民"下个星期到来,不难推出, residents

就是指 chickens.

2) 通过对比关系来推测词义

此法又称为“反义词”，即利用反义词来推测生词的意义。如反义词 hot 和 cold; perfect 和 imperfect, 甚至前、后句为肯定与否定或是与不是等，在句内词与词之间，在段内句与句之间的关系上起互为线索的作用。

此类转折词有: but, while, on the one hand ... on the other world for one thing ... for another ... 和众多反义词。

There was a gardener who looked after his garden with great care. To water his flowers, he used two buckets. One was a shiny and new bucket. The other was a very old and dilapidated one, which had seen many years of service, but was now past its best.

56. What does the underlined word "dilapidated" probably mean?

- A. Dirty
B. Dark
C. Worn-out
D. Plain-looking

解答: C. 词义猜测题。由前面的 "one ... the other ..." 结构可知 "old and dilapidated" 对应前面的 "shiny and new"。因此可判断 dilapidated 的意思与 shiny and new 相反, 即 wornout。

3) 通过因果关系来推测词义

在句子或段落中, 若两个事物、两个现象之间构成因果关系, 我们可以根据这种逻辑关系推知生词词义。因果关系的语境, 通常由 because, so that, so, such ... that 等连词体现出来或下句间暗含某种因果关系。

The multi-million pound new Library of Birmingham (LoB) will be the most visible sign of the way the city is accepting the digitalization (数字化) of everyday life.

Set to open in 2013, the £188m LoB is already beginning to take shape next to the Birmingham Repertory Theatre, with which it will share some equipment.

As digital media (媒介) is important to its idea, the project is already providing chances for some of the many small new local companies working at the new technologies.



1. The underline part "its idea" in Paragraph 3 refers to the

idea of _____.

A. the equipment

B. the project

C. the digital media

D. the physical library

解答. B. 词义猜测题. 根据该 idea 所在语境可推断出. 因为对于这个工程 (its idea) 来说媒体很重要. 所以现在这个工程 (project) 正提供给它一些小公司一些机会从事一些新技术研发工作.

4. 通过同类关系来推断题义.

同类部分可当作同位语的词. 短语或从句等. 同类关系常用 such as, like,

for example, for instance 等近义词列举同类词汇来体现.

A recent study of ancient and modern elephants has come up with the unexpected conclusion that the African elephant is divided into two distinct (不同的) species.

The discovery was made by researchers at York and Harvard Universities when they were examining the genetic relationship between the ancient woolly mammoth and mastodon to modern elephants -- the Asian elephant, African forest elephant and African savanna elephant.

Once they obtained DNA sequences (序列) from two fossils (化石), mammoths and mastodons, the team compared them with DNA from modern elephants. They found to their amazement that modern forest and savanna elephants are as distinct from each other as Asian elephants and mammoths.

The scientists used detailed genetic analysis to prove that the African savanna elephants and African forest elephants have been distinct species for several million years. The divergence of the two species took place around the time of the **divergence** of Asian elephants and woolly mammoths. This result amazed all the scientists.

There has long been debate in the scientific community that the two might be separate species, but this is the most convincing scientific evidence so far that they are indeed different species.

2. The underlined word "divergence" in paragraph 4 means

"_____."

A. evolution

B. exhibition

C. separation

D. examination



解答. C. 词义猜测题. 根据下文的 distinct species 和第五段的 separate species

& different species 可以推断 divergence 是和 distinct, separation 或 difference 是同类

5) 根据生活常识来推测词义。

推测词义时需利用上下文语境, 结合自身生活经验进行逻辑推理。

When I first got an email account ten years ago, I received communications only from family, friends, and colleagues. Now it seems that every time I check my e-mail, I have an endless series of advertisements and other correspondence that do not interest me the at all. If we want e-mail to continue to be useful, we need specific laws that make spamming (发送垃圾邮件) a crime.

57. What does the underlined word "correspondence" in paragraph I probably mean?

- A. Messages. B. Ideas.
C. Connections. D. Programs.

解答: A 词义推测题。根据句子含义及前面的 advertisements 的提示, 结合常识, 可以得出: 电子邮箱中收到的垃圾邮件不外乎广告和其他消息。

A. messages 消息, 通讯, 信息, 书信 B. ideas 想法, 念头, 意见, 思想, 观念

C. connections 连接, 关系, 接头 D. program 节目, 程序

6) 利用文意及逻辑关系来推测词义

利用文意及逻辑关系推测词义时, 关键应在理清生词前后文意的基础上, 着重分析前后文的逻辑关系, 是递进、转折还是并列。

The garden city was largely the invention of Ebenezer Howard (1850-1928). After immigrating from England to the USA, and an unsuccessful attempt to make a living as a farmer, he moved to Chicago, where he saw the reconstruction of the city after the disastrous fire of 1871. In those days, it was nicknamed "the Garden City", almost certainly the source of Howard's name for his later building plan of towns. Returning to London, Howard developed his design in the 1880s and 1890s, drawing on ideas that were popular at the time, but creating a unique combination of designs.

67. The underlined phrase "drawing on" in Paragraph 1 probably means _____.

- A. making use of B. making comments on
C. giving an explanation of D. giving a description of



解答: A 词义猜测题。由第1段中的... Howard developed his design in the 1880s and 1890s, drawing on ideas that were popular at the time... 可知“Howard 利用当时比较流行的理念来发展自己的设计...”, 因此, drawing on 意为“利用”, 与 making use of 含义相同。B making moments on 对... 作出评价 C give an explanation of 对... 作出解释 D give a description of 对... 进行描述。

T) 利用熟词的新词性来抽象词义。

利用熟词的新词性抽象词义, 关键在理解原词基础上分析新词性。

The way we do things round here

Some years ago, I was hired by an American bank. I received a letter from the head of the Personnel Department that started, "Dear John, I am quite pleased that you have decided to join us." That "quite" saddened me. I thought he was saying "we're kind of pleased you decided to join us although I wish we had hired someone else." Then I discovered that in American English "quite" sometimes means "very", while in British English it means "fairly".

So the first lesson about working in other countries is to learn the language and by that I don't just mean the words people speak. It is body language, dress, manners, ideas and so on. The way people do things highlights many of the differences we see between cultures (文化).

2. The word "highlights" in Paragraph 2 probably means _____.

- A. encourages B. helps to narrow
C. increases D. draws attention to

解答: D. 词义猜测题

由文章可知, 无论我们说话还是做事, 必须要注意我们文化间的差异性。many of the differences we see between cultures 就是我们要注意的内容, highlight 本意“强调”, 此处表示“注意”。故选D。



高分技巧

1. 通过构词法来猜测词义

1) 转化: 指词的形式不变而词性发生变化的一种构词法。

如 nurse n. 护士 → v. 护理

free a. 自由的 → v. 释放

一般来说, 转化前后的词义大致相符。

2) 合成: 指由两个或两个以上的具有独立含义的单词组合成一个新的单词。主要有合成动词、合成形容词、合成名词等。

3) 派生: 指由一个词根加上前缀或后缀构成一个新的单词。

2. 常用词根 (能背出来最好, 不过对于时间紧张的同学就忍了吧! 这里非常好的背单词利器! 以后英语更高层次的学习都是用词根词缀法背单词的!)

aer(ə) 空气, 空中, 航空; aeroplane 飞机

agri 田地, 农田; agriculture 农业, 农艺

anim 生命, 活, 心神, 意志; animal 动物

audi(t) 听; audience 听众, 听众

bat 打; bat 球拍/battle 战斗

bell 战争; rebel 反叛, 反抗

bibli(o) 书; bibliography 目录学/Bible 圣经

bi(o) 生命, 生物; biology 生物学

blank 白, blank 空白

cede, cede, cess 行走; precede 领先/progress 前进/process 过程

cept 拿, 取; except 把……除外

cert 确实; 确信; 确定; certain 确实的

cid 降落; 降临; accident 偶然的事; 事故/incident 事变; 事件

cid, cis 切; 杀; decide 下决心/suicide 自杀, 自杀者

circ 环, 圆; circle 圆, 圈, 环状物

claim, clam 喊叫; exclaim 惊叫

close, clos 关闭; include 包括

cult 耕作, 栽培; 培养; cultivate 耕作; 养殖/culture (由教养所形成的结果) 文化

cure 关心, 挂念; 注意; cure 医治, 治疗/secure 无忧的; 安全的

cur, curs, cours, cours 跑; course 进程; 路程; 课程

cycl(e) 圆, 环, 轮; cycle 周期, 循环; 一组

dem(ə) 人民; democracy 民主, 民主政治

di 日; diary 日记; 日记簿

dic(t) 说; dictate 口授; 听写

edit 给; edit 编辑

doc(t) 教; doctor 博士; 医生

dom 屋, 家; domestic 家里的; 国内的

dorm 睡眠; dormitory 寝室, 集体宿舍/dorm [口语] 宿舍

duc(t) 引导; educate 教育/conduct 指导

em, am 拿; example 例子/sample 样品

emper, imper 命令; 统治; 统治; emperor 皇帝/imperial 皇帝的, 帝国的

equ(i) 等, 均, 平; equal 相等的, 同等的

err 漫游; 走; error 错误

fact(i) 做; factory 工厂, 制造厂/fact 事实

fer 带; 拿; differ 不同/confer 协商

fict, fig 制造; 塑造; 虚构; fiction 虚构; 小说/figure 塑像; 外形

fid 信任; 信仰; confide 信任

fin 末尾; 界限; final 最后的; 最终的/finish 结束, 完成

lect, flex 弯曲; reflect 反射; reflex 反射(光); 反映

frag, fract 破, 折; fragile 易碎的

frig 冷; refrigerator 冰箱

- fund, found 基础; found 建立; 打基础/ **fundament** 基础
- fus 推; 流; 倾向; refuse 拒绝/ **confuse** 混乱; 混淆
- geo 地; geography 地理, 地理学/ **geometry** 几何学
- grad 步; 走; 假; gradual 逐步, 逐渐/ **grade** 等级; 年级/ **graduate** 毕业
- gram 写; 画; 文字; 图形; grammar 语法, 文法/ **telegram** 电报/ **program** 节目单, 说明书; 大纲/ **gram** 克(国际重量单位)
- graph 写; 画; 文字; 图形; 记录器; photograph 照片, 拍照/ **telegraph** 电报; 电报机
- grav 重; **grave** 重大/ **gravity** 严重(性); 重力
- green 行走; **progress** 前进, 进步/ **aggress** 侵入
- habit 居住; **habitable** 可居住的
- hap 机会, 运气; 偶然; happen(偶然)发生/ **perhaps** 也许[per = by]/ **happy** 幸福的
- inhibit 拿; 持; exhibit 展览/ **inhibit** 抑制/ **prohibit** 禁止
- horr 战栗, 怕; **horror** 恐怖/ **horrible** 可怕的
- hospit, host 客人; **hospitable** 好客的/ **hospital** 医院/ **hostel** 旅店/ **hotel** 旅馆/ **host** 主人
- ide(i) 思想; 概念; 意; 心; **idea** 思想; 概念; 主意/ **ideal** 理想的
- idio 特殊的; 个人的; 专有的; **idiom** 惯用语, 习语/ **idiot** 白痴
- it 行走; **exit** 出口
- ject 投掷; **project** 发射, 设计/ **inject** 注射/ **eject** 驱回, 拒绝; **reject** 抵制/ **subject** 统治; (句子的) 主语
- joct 连接; **junction** 连接, 接合点
- lat 持; 拿; 带; **translate** 翻译; 转化
- lect, leg, lig 选, 收; **elect** 选举/ **collect** 收集
- lect, leg 讲, 言; **lecture** 讲演/ **dialect** 方言
- leg, legis 法; **legal** 法律上的
- lev 举, 升; **elevate** 举起; 升起/ **elevator** 电梯
- liber 自由; **liberty** 自由, 自由权
- lingu 语言; **linguist** 语言学者/ **bilingual** 双语的
- liter 文字, 字母; **literature** 文学(作品)
- loc 地方; **local** 本地的/ **locate** 确定……的地点, 使坐落于
- log 言, 说; **dialogue** 对话/ **apology** 道歉/ **logic** 逻辑
- lun 月亮; **lunar** 月亮的; 历的
- magn(i) 大; **magnificent** 宏伟的
- maj 大; **major** 主要的/ **majority** 大多数
- man 居住, 停留; **permanent** 常驻的, 永久的
- man(u) 手; **manual** 手的, 手工的/ **manage** 掌管; 管理
- med 中间; **medium** 中间; 中间物
- medic(i) 医; **medicine** 医学, 药
- mentor 记忆, 记住的; **memory** 记忆(力); 纪念
- nient 心, 智, 神, 思; **mental** 智力的; 精神的/ **comment** 评论
- metr 测量器, 计, 表; **thermometer** 温度计/ **meter** 米, 公尺
- metr(x) 测量, 测量学; **geometry** 几何学
- migr 迁移; **migrate** 迁移, 移居/ **immigrant** 移入国内者, 移入者/ **emigrant** 移居国外者, 迁出者
- min(i) 小; **minute** 分, 分钟/ **minister** 大臣, 部长
- mir 惊奇, 惊异; **admire** 羡慕; 赞赏/ **miracle** 奇迹/ **mirror** 镜子
- mis, mit 投, 送, 发; **dismiss** 开除; 解散/ **transmit** 传递, 播送
- mob 动; **mobile** 活动的, 可动的/ **automobile** 汽车; 自动推进的
- mon 单独的, 一个; **monk** 和尚
- mon 告诫, 提醒; **monument** 纪念碑, 纪念像, 纪念物
- mot 移动, 动; **motive** 运动的/ **motor** 发动机, 摩托
- nat 出生; **nature** 自然, 本性/ **native** 土生的/ **nation** 民族
- nect, nex 结, 系, 束; **connect** 连接
- noc 伤害; **nocent** 有害的, 有罪的/ **innocent** 无辜的, 天真的
- nom(i) 学, 术, 法; **astronomy** 天文学
- norm 规范; 正规; 正常; **normal** 正规的
- nov 新; **novel** 新奇的; 小说
- numer 数; **numeral** 数字的; 数字; 数词
- oper 工作; **operate** 工作; 操作; 动手术
- opt 选择; **adopt** 采用/ **opt** 选择
- ori 升起; **origin** 原始; 起源
- paci 和平; **pacific** 和平的, 太平的; 平静的(**the Pacific** 太平洋)
- par 相等; **compare** 比较
- par 生产; **parent** 父亲, 母亲
- part 分, 部分; **part** 部分/ **Party** 党派/ **party** 一批人; 聚会
- pend 悬挂; **depend** 依靠, 依赖/ **suspend** 挂, 悬; 暂停/ **expend** 花费, 用款/ **spend** 花钱, 花费
- pet 追求; **compete** 竞争, 角逐, 比赛
- phun 声音; **telephone** 电话/ **phone** 电话/ **microphone** 麦克风, 扩音器, 话筒
- phot(o) 光; **photograph** 照相, 相片
- pict 画, 描绘; **picture** 图画
- plen 满, 全; **plenty** 充足, 丰富, 大量
- popul 人民; **population** 全体居民, 人口/ **popular** 人民的, 大众的; 大众喜欢的; 流行的
- port 拿, 带, 运; **import** 进口/ **export** 出口/ **report** 报告/ **deport** 驱逐/ **support** 支持, 支撑
- pos 放置; **expose** 揭露/ **oppose** 反对, 反抗/ **propose** 提议, 建议
- pun, pen 罚; **punish** 惩罚, 处罚
- pur 清, 纯, 净; **purity** 使纯净
- ras, rad 擦, 刮; **eraser** 擦除器(如黑板擦、橡皮)
- rect 正, 直; **correct** 改正; 正确的/ **erect** 直立的, 矗立的
- rupt 破; **rupture** 破裂, 裂开/ **interrupt** 打断, 中断
- sal 盐; **salt** 盐/ **salad** 色拉(一种凉菜)
- sat, satis, satur 足, 满; 饱; **satisfy** 使满足, 使满意
- sci 知; **science** 科学/ **scient** 有知识的
- scrib, script 写; **describe** 描写



- sec, sequ 跟随; second 第二; 秒/sequent 连续的, 相继的
 sect 切割; bisect 二等分, 平分/section 切开, 一部分/dissect
 解剖/insect 昆虫
 sen 老; senior 年长的, 年长者/senate 参议院, 上议院
 sent 感觉; consent 同意, 赞同/sense 感觉
 serv 奴, 仆; serve 服务/servant 仆人
 sid 坐; preside 主持/president 总统; 大学校长
 simil, simul 相似, 相同; similar 相似的
 sist 站立; resist 反抗, 抵抗/consist 由……组成/assist 帮助,
 援助/insist 坚决主张
 sol 单独; sole 单独的/sole 独唱
 sol 太阳; solar 太阳的, 日光的
 spect 看; inspect 检查, 审查/expect 盼望, 期待, 期望/respect
 尊重, 尊敬/spectacle 光景, 景象; 奇观
 splend 发光; splendid 有光彩的, 灿烂的
 st, stat 立; stand 站, 立/rest 其余, 剩余/station 车站
 struct 建造; structure 构造, 结构/construct 构筑
 tact, tag 触, 接触; contact 接触, 联系
 tail 切割; tailor 裁缝/detail 细节, 详情
 tain, ten, tin 握, 持, 守; contain 容纳, 包含/continue 连续
 tect 掩盖; detect 侦察/detective 侦探的/protect 保护
 tele 远; telephone 电话/telegram 电报/telegraph 电报/televi-
 sion 电视
 tend, tens, tent 伸; extend 伸开, 扩展/extensible 可伸展的/
 attend 出席/tent 帐篷
 terr 怕, 恐, 吓; terrible 可怕的/terror 恐怖/terrorist 恐怖分子
 text 编织; text 课文; 本文; 正文
 therm(o) 热; thermos 暖水瓶
 tir 拉, 引; retire 退休; tirade 冗长的演说
 tour 转, 迂回; tour 旅游, 游历
 tract 拉, 抽, 引; tractor 拖拉机/attract 吸引, 诱惑/contract 合
 同, 订约/abstract 抽象的/retract 撤回
 turb 混乱, 骚扰; disturb 扰乱, 打扰
 tut, tuit 监护; tutor 监护人; 指导教师/tutee 被教导者, 学生/
 tuition 教导; 学费
 umbr 荫, 影; umbrella 伞
 un(i) —; unite 统一, 联合/unit 单位, 单元
 vari 变化; various 各种各样的, 不同的/vary 改变/variety 变
 化, 多样化
 ven 来; prevent 预防, 防止/event 事件
 verb 字, 词, 言; verbal 词语的, 动词的/proverb 格言, 谚语/
 verb 动词/adverb 副词
 vis, vid 看; visible 看得见的/visit 参观, 游览/advise 向……
 提意见, 建议/visual 视觉的/visa 签证, 签准/television 电视/pro-
 vide 预防; 供给
 viv 活; vivid 活泼的, 有生气的/survive 幸存
 voc, vok 声音, 叫喊; vocal 有声的/vocabulary 词汇(量)
 vol(unt) 意志, 意愿; volunteer 志愿者
 zo(o) 动物; zoology 动物学/zoo 动物园



3. 常见前缀

a- 表示没有, 缺乏, 向上, 离开, 加强等

acentric 无中心的, ahead 在前, 提前 away 离开 arise 升起

ab- 表示脱离, 反常

absent 缺席 abnormal 不正常的

ad- 表方向, 变化, 添加, 运动.

advance 前进 adhere 附着 adjective 形容词

anti- 反, 防, 抗

antifascist 反法西斯主义的

be- 表离去, 加强, 使...

behead 砍头

bi- 双, 双重

bicycle 自行车 bigamy 重婚(罪)

by- 表副, 非正式

byname 别名 byproduct 副产品 byroad 小路

co- 共同, 相互

cooperation 合作 comate 同伴

com- 共同, 互相, 加强

combine 联合 compete 竞争

counter- 反, 逆, 副

counteraction 反作用

de- 除去, 否定, 离开, 低下

declass 降低社会地位 decolour 脱去颜色

dif- 不, 分开



different 不相同的 diffuse 分散的

dis- 不, 除去, 分开

disarm 裁军 dissect 切开

en- 放进, 饰以, 使, 使成	ob- 反, 颠倒, 取消
enrich 使变富 encase 放进箱中	object 反对
enring 戴戒指	oc- 反, 加强
ex- 出, 除出, 无, 前在	occident 西方
expeditionary 远征的 excise 切去	of- 在前, 反
exanimate 无生气的 ex-president 前总统	offer 提议 offend 冒犯
extra- 超过, 以外	out- 超过, 过分, 出外, 除去
extraordinary 非常的	outdoor 户外的 outroot 除根
fore- 表示前, 先	over- 过度, 在外, 颠倒
forefather 先人 foretell 预言	overwork 劳累过度
il- 不, 内, 向的	past- 后
illogical 不合逻辑的	postwar 战后
im- 不, 内, 向的	pre- 前, 先
immoral 不人道的 import 进口	prefix 前缀
in- 不, 向的	pro- 向前, 领先, 代替, 赞成
incomplete 不完全的 income 收入	progress 进步
inter- 在...之间, 在...之间	re- 再, 重, 相反
intercourse 交往	rearm 重新武装
ir- 不, 向的	self- 自己
irrelative 无关的	self-defence 自卫
mini- 微小的	semi- 半
miniskirt 超短裙	semicircle 半圆
mis- 误, 鬼	step- 后, 继
mistreat 虐待	stepfather 继父
 non- 不, 无, 非	sub- 下, 次, 微
nonsmoker 不抽烟的人	subway 地铁

sub- 下, 随后	-ate 人, 职位	graduate 毕业生
success 成功	-ation 状态, 动作, 过程	graduation 毕业
super- 上, 超	-ator 人, 物	elevator 电梯
superpower 超级大国	-cy 状态, 职位	bankruptcy 破产
syn- 共同的	-dom 身份, ...界	freedom 自由
synactic 共同作用的	-ee 人, 物	employee 雇员者
trans- 横过, 超越	-el 大, 小, 物, 场所	hotel 旅馆
transnational 跨国的	-ence 性质, 状态, 行为	difference 不同
tri- 三	-ency 性质, 状态, 行为	innocency 无罪
triangle 三角形	-ent 人, 物	student 学生
un- 不, 无, 非, 未	-er 人, 物	worker 工人
unmanned 无人驾驶的	-ery 场所, 地点	fishery 渔厂
under- 下, 内, 副, 不足	-ess 女性, 雌性	goddess 女神
undervest 内衣	-ful 充满	houseful 一屋子
vice- 副	-hood 性质, 身份, 状态, 时期	girlhood 少女时期
vice-chairman 副主席	-ion 物, 行为, 结果, 状态	completion 完成
with- 相反, 向后	-ism 论, 主义	communism 共产主义
withstand 反对	-ist 人	novelist 小说家
5. 常用后缀	-ity 性质, 状态	reality 现实
1) 名词后缀	-ness 性质, 状态	kindness 善良
-al 人, 物, 行为	-or 人, 物	actor 男演员
rival 竞争者	-ory 物, 场所	incensory 香炉
-an 人	-ship 性质, 身份, 职位	relationship 关系
orphan 孤儿	-sion 行为, 状态	tension 紧张
-ancy 状态, 行为	-tion 行为, 结果, 过程	production 生产
militancy 交战	-ure 行为, 状态	exposure 暴露
-ant 人, 物		
servant 仆人		
-ar 人, 物		
collar 领子		



2) 形容词后缀

-able 可能的 movable 可移动的

-al ...的 equal 相等的

-an ...的 urban 城市的

-ant ...的 assistant 辅助的

-ary ...的 military 军事的

-ate ...的 pedate 足状的

-atic ...的 systematic 有条理的

-ative ...的 qualitative 量化的

-ed ...的 coloured 彩色的

-ful 满的,有...的, ...的 powerful 强大的

-ian ...的 barbarian 野蛮的

-ible ...的 sensible 可感觉的

-ic ...的 atomic 原子的

-ish ...的 coldish 略寒的

-ive ...的 creative 创造性的

-less 无...的,不...的 homeless 无家可归的

-ly 表...的 godly 神圣的

-ous ...的 prosperous 繁荣的

-th 第...的, ...之 seventh 第七

-ward 向... backward 向后的

-y 与...的,有...的, ...的 cloudy 多云的

-fy 使正常化,使成为... glorify 颂扬

-ish 使...成 famish 使挨饿

-ize 使...化 normalize 使正常化

4) 副词后缀

-ad 向... laterad 向侧面

-ce 次数,自... thrice 三次

-ly 状态,程度,方式 extremely 非常地

-t 时间,地点,状态 outdoors 在户外

-wards 向...朝... outwards 向外

-wise 方向 sunwise 顺时针的

3) 动词后缀



-ate 使...成 fascinate 使着迷

-en 使变成 sharpen 削尖

5. 阅读题训练

阅读的四题型经过前面的详细讲解相信大家已掌握不少, 现在把这些题型混在一起, 出一些题目来练练手。此处我就不再每一篇每一篇为大家分析如何来阅读了, 大家可尝试自己来进行略读、细读的练习。

1. (2011·全国Ⅰ·E)

"I didn't hear them call my name," explained Shelley Hennig to *Active Teens* (AT) as she talked about that exciting moment on national television when she won the honor of Miss Teen USA 2004. "Are you ready?" is what she heard. Then she said, "I shook my head no, and then they said 'yes' and it was announced again."

It was four days after that life-changing moment for the seventeen-year-old high school student from Destrehan, Louisiana—she was still on cloud nine.

"I was so shocked! I never believed that it could actually really happen." Present in the audience (观众) that day were: her mother and father, older brother, her friends, and her dance teacher.

Understanding why members of her family and her friends would be there, AT asked why her dance teacher had traveled so far to see her compete (比赛). "She's always been my role model. I've danced with her since I was six. She's been through so many difficulties and came through them all. I've learned to get over bad life's experiences and learned how to move on because of her."

One of those bad life's experiences for Shelley happened three years ago when her brother Brad was killed in a drunk driving accident. He was 18. She found writing helped her get through the rough days. She said, "I write a lot about my brother. I write a lot, a lot, a lot..."

As Miss Louisiana Teen, she traveled around the state speaking to teens (青少年) about the dangers of drinking and driving. In her role as Miss Teen USA, Shelley will continue to speak to youth about safe driving, in addition to many other things to help the youth.

When AT asked Miss Teen USA if she had any advice for our readers, she said, "Don't let anyone change you. Hang out with people that make you feel good about yourself. That way, it is easy to be yourself."

1. What do the words "on cloud nine" in Paragraph 2 probably mean?

- A. frightened B. troubled C. very happy D. very angry

2. Shelley takes her dance teacher as a role model mainly because she is _____.

- A. determined B. friendly C. strict D. experienced

3. How many children did the Hennigs have according to the text?

- A. 1. B. 2. C. 3. D. 4.

4. What did Shelley often do after she became Miss Louisiana Teen?

- A. She visited drunken drivers. B. She gave dance performances.
C. She made speeches on safe driving. D. She helped other teens with their studies.

5. What suggestion does Shelley give to the teens?

- A. Be yourself with the support of friends. B. Meet friends whenever possible.
C. Go easy on yourself and others D. Have a good role model.



2) (2011·北京·C)

Students and Technology in the Classroom

I love my blackberry—it's my little connection to the larger world that can go anywhere with me. I also love my laptop computer, as it holds all of my writing and thoughts. Despite this love of technology, I know that there are times when I need to move away from these devices (设备) and truly communicate with others.

On occasion, I teach a course called History Matters for a group of higher education managers. My goals for the class include a full discussion of historical themes and ideas. Because I want students to thoroughly study the material and exchange their ideas with each other in the classroom, I have a rule—no laptop, iPads, phones, etc. When students were told my rule in advance of the class, some of them were not happy.

Most students assume that my reasons for this rule include unpleasant experiences in the past with students misusing technology. There's a bit of truth to that. Some students assume that I am anti-technology. There's no truth in that at all. I love technology and try to keep up with it so I can relate to my students.

The real reason why I ask students to leave technology at the door is that I think there are very few places in which we can have deep conversations and truly engage complex ideas. Interruptions by technology often break concentration and allow for too much dependence on outside information for ideas. I want students to dig deep within themselves for inspiration and ideas. I want them to push each other to think differently and make connections between the course material and the class discussion.

I've been teaching my history class in this way for many years and the evaluations reflect student satisfaction with the environment that I create. Students realize that with deep conversation and challenge, they learn at a level that helps them keep the course material beyond the classroom.

I'm not saying that I won't ever change my mind about technology use in my history class, but until I hear a really good reason for the change, I'm sticking to my plan. A few hours of technology-free dialogue is just too sweet to give up.

- Some of the students in the history class were unhappy with _____.
 - the course material
 - others' misuse of technology
 - discussion topics
 - the author's class regulations
- The underlined word "engage" in para.4 probably means _____.
 - explore
 - accept
 - change
 - reject
- According to the author, the use of technology in the classroom may _____.
 - keep students from doing independent thinking
 - encourage students to have in-depth conversations
 - help students to better understand complex themes
 - affect students' concentration on course evaluation
- It can be inferred from the last paragraph that the author _____.
 - is quite stubborn
 - will give up teaching history
 - will change his teaching plan soon
 - values technology-free dialogues in his class

3) (2011. 天津. D)

Blind imitation (模仿) is self-destruction. To those who do not recognize their unique worth, imitation appears attractive; to those who know their strength, imitation is unacceptable.

In the early stages of skill or character development, imitation is helpful. When I first learned to cook, I used recipes (菜谱) and turned out some tasty dishes. But soon I grew bored. Why follow someone else's way of cooking when I could create my own? Imitating role models is like using training wheels on a child's bicycle; they help you get going, but once you find your own balance, you fly faster and farther without relying on them.

In daily life, imitation can hurt us if we subconsciously (下意识地) hold poor role models. If, as a child, you observed people whose lives were bad, you may have accepted their fear and pain as normal and gone on to follow what they did. If you do not make strong choices for yourself, you will get the results of the weak choices of others.

In the field of entertainment, our culture glorifies celebrities. Those stars look great on screen. But when they step off screen, their personal lives may be disastrous. If you are going to follow someone, focus on their talent, not their bad character or unacceptable behaviors.

Blessed is the person willing to act on their sudden desire to create something unique. Think of the movies, books, teachers and friends that have affected you most deeply. They touched you because their creations were motivated by inspiration, not desperation. The world is changed not by those who do what has been done before them, but by those who do what has been done inside them. Creative people have an endless resource of ideas. The problem a creator faces is not running out of material; it is what to do with the material knocking at the door of imagination.

Study your role models, accept the gifts they have given, and leave behind what does not serve. Then you can say, "I stand on the shoulders of my ancestors," tragedies and declare victory, and know that they are cheering on.

1. Imitation proves useful when you _____.

- A. know you are unique
B. lose the balance of life
C. begin to learn something new
D. get tired of routine practice

2. To avoid the bad result of imitation, we should _____.

- A. forget daily fear and pain
B. choose the right example
C. ask others for decisions
D. stay away from stars

3. According to the author, the world moves on because of those who are _____.

- A. desperate to influence others with their knowledge
B. ready to turn their original ideas into reality
C. eager to discover what their ancestors did
D. willing to accept others' ideas

4. The trouble a creator faces is _____.

- A. the lack of strong motivation
B. the absence of practical ideas
C. how to search for more materials
D. how to use imagination creatively

5. What is the author's purpose in writing this passage?

- A. To highlight the importance of creativity.
B. To criticize the characters of role models.
C. To compare imitation with creation.
D. To explain the meaning of success.

4) (2010·32期·D)

Imagine, one day, getting out of bed in Beijing and being at your office in Shanghai in only a couple of hours, and then, after a full day of work, going back home to Beijing and having dinner there.

Sounds unusual, doesn't it? But it's not that unrealistic, with the development of China's high-speed railway system. And that's not all. China has an even greater high-speed railway plan to connect the country with Southeast Asia, and eventually Eastern Europe.

China is negotiating to extend its own high-speed railway network to up to 17 countries in 10 to 15 years, eventually reaching London and Singapore.

China has proposed three such projects. The first would possibly connect Kunming with Singapore via Vietnam and Malaysia. Another could start in Urumqi and go through Kazakhstan and Uzbekistan, and possibly to Germany. The third would start in the northeast and go north through Russia and then into Western Europe.

If China's plan for the high-speed railway goes forward, people could zip over from London to Beijing in under two days.

The new system would still follow China's high-speed railway standard. And the trains would be able to go 346 kilometers an hour, almost as fast as some airplanes.

China's bullet train (高速客车), the one connecting Wuhan to Guangzhou, already has the World's fastest average speed. It covers 1,069 kilometers in about three hours.

Of course, there are some technical challenges to overcome. There are so many issues that need to be settled, such as safety, rail gauge (轨距), maintenance of railway tracks. So, it's important to pay attention to every detail.

But the key issue is really money. China is already spending hundreds of billions of yuan on domestic railway expansion.

China prefers that the other countries pay in natural resources rather than with capital investment. Resources from those countries could stream into China to sustain development.

It'll be a win-win project. For other countries, the railway network will definitely create more opportunities for business, tourism and so on, not to mention the better communication among those countries.

For China, such a project would not only connect it with the rest of Asia and bring some much-needed resources, but would also help develop China's far west. We foresee that in the coming decades, millions of people will migrate to the western regions, where the land is empty and resources unused. With high-speed trains, people will set up factories and business centers in the west once and for all. And they'll trade with Central Asian and Eastern European countries.

1. China's new high-speed railway plan will be a win-win project because _____.

- A. China will get much-needed resources and develop its western regions
 B. China and the countries involved will benefit from the project in various ways
 C. China will develop its railway system and communication with other countries
 D. the foreign countries involved will develop their railway transportation, business and tourism

2. According to the passage, the greatest challenge to the new high-speed railway plan is _____.

- A. technical issues
 B. safety of the system
 C. financial problems
 D. maintenance of railway tracks

3. Which of the following words describes the author's attitude towards China's high-speed railway plan?

- A. Critical. B. Reserved. C. Doubtful D. Positive.

4. Which of the following might be the best title for the passage?

- A. New Railway Standards B. Big Railway Dreams
 C. High-speed Bullet Trains D. International Railway Network

答案区

(华丽的答案终于现身, 泪牛满面啊 ~)

(1) 【语篇解读】 本文是一篇记叙文。本文主人公 Shelley Henning 讲述了她赢得 2004 年美国青少年组这项大赛的故事和成功背后的辛酸以及她成了路易斯安那州形象大使之后所做的工作——宣讲酒后驾车的危害。

1. C 猜测词义题。由第一段第一句和第二段可知, 这里是作者回忆她获得 2004 年美国青少年组选美大赛后的第四天起, 她的生活发生了翻天覆地的变化, 我们可以想象出她仍然很高兴的样子, 故选 C。
2. A 事实细节题。由文章第四段信息句 She's always been my role model and I've learned to get over bad life's experience and learned how to move on because of her 可知, 她的舞蹈老师能够和她同呼吸共患难, 从而表明 Shelley 的舞蹈老师的坚强的意志是她学习的榜样。故选 A。
3. C 推理判断题。由第三段和第五段信息句 When her brother Brad was killed in a drunk driving accident 可推知: Henning 一家总共有三个孩子: Henning, her older brother 和她的醉酒驾驶出车祸的弟弟, 故选 C。
4. C 事实细节题。由文章倒数第二段信息句 In her role as Miss Teen USA, Shelley will continue to speak to youth about safe driving... 可知, 在她当选青少年组美国小姐之后, Shelley 继续向青年朋友们做安全驾驶的演讲和宣传。
5. A 推理判断题。文章最后一段告知我们, 常和朋友相处会让你心情舒畅, 也就是说会使自己怡然自得, Shelley 给青少年提出的建议是: 有了朋友鼎力支持我们一定会身心自在, 怡然自得, 故选 A。

(2) 【语篇解读】 本文题材为夹叙夹议。作者在文中叙述了自己上课时的经历, 即禁止学生讨论问题时使用电脑, 手机等高科技工具, 并解释了其中的原因以及益处。

1. D 事实细节题。由第二段最后一句可以得知, 当学生被提前告知禁止使用高科技工具的规定时, 有些学生感到不高兴, 故答案为 D 项。
2. A 猜测词义题。根据下文可知, 高科技工具经常分散学生们的注意力, 使他们自己的观点过多依赖一些外部信息, 由此可推断出作者在本句要表明只有在不使用高科技工具的地方, 学生们才能进行深入讨论, 探讨 (explore) 一些复杂的观点, 但这样的场合很少。accept 接受; change 改变; reject 拒绝。
3. A 推理判断题。根据第四段 "Interruptions by technology often break concentration and allow for too much dependence on outside information for ideas." 可知, 高科技工具会分散学生们的注意力, 使他们的观点过多依赖一些外部信息, 即高科技工具会阻止他们进行独立思考。



对不使用高科技工具的课堂讨论评价很高, 不会轻易放弃, 除非自己听到一个合理的理由, 由此可推断出答案为 D 项。不能说作者是“顽固的”, 因为有合理的理由, 我会改变自己的做法, 排除 A 项; B 项文章并未提到; 也不能说作者很快就会改变自己的教学计划, 除非有合理的理由, 排除 C 项。

(3) 【语篇解读】 本文为议论文。作者告诉人们: 盲目模仿是自我毁灭, 命运垂青那些乐于把自己的新奇想法付诸实践的人们, 世界的发展更是需要这些有创造力的人。

1. C 事实细节题。根据第二段第一句 In the early stages of skill or character development... 可知 C 项正确。
2. B 推理判断题。根据第二段第一句... imitation can hurt us if we consciously (下意识地) hold poor role models. (如果不经意地模仿了坏榜样就可能伤害到我们。) 及下文的例子可知: 为了避免模仿造成的恶果, 我们应该选择好榜样。
3. B 事实细节题。根据第五段的第四句可知: 世界之所以发展是因为有那些乐于将自己的新奇想法付诸于实践的人们, 所以 B 项正确。
4. D 事实细节题。根据第五段的最后一句 it is what to do with all the unmaterial knocking at the door of imagination 可知, 一个创造者面对的困难是怎样创造性地利用想象力。
5. A 主旨大意题。通读全文可知, 作者旨在凸显创造力的重要性, 所以 A 项正确。

(4) 【语篇解读】 本文采用夹叙夹议手法, 主要介绍了中国高铁计划, 中国打算与东南亚国家相连, 最终到达伦敦和新加坡。

1. B 事实细节题。由本位最后两段可知, 中国和相关国家可在多方面受益, 其余三项均为细节, 不全面, 故不能选。
2. C 事实细节题。由倒数第四段第一句 "But the key issue is really money." 可知最大的问题是经济问题, 故选 C 项。
3. D 推理判断题。由全文的基调及最后一段第二句 "We foresee that in the coming decades, millions of people will migrate to the western regions, where the land is empty and resources unused." 可知作者对中国高铁的态度是乐观的, 故选 D 项。其余三词均为贬义词, 不是作者的语气。
4. B 主旨大意题。综观全文可知本文主要介绍了中国高铁计划, 故“高铁之梦”为最佳答案。A 项“新高铁标准”不是本文主题; C 项“高速客车”, 尽管在文中出现, 但只是提到而已, 也不是主题; D 项“国际高铁网络”太泛了, 也不能选。

专题五 任务型阅读

一. 大纲完全解读.

1. 题型介绍

任务型阅读是2008年江苏高考的新增题型,一共有10个小题,每小题1分,满分10分.建议完成时间为12~15 min.

任务型阅读提供了两种示例——表格式和树状式.题例中要求学生根据所读内容在文章后表格中的空格处填入一个最恰当的单词,每空1词或2词,不超过3个.要求学生读懂易懂的英语总作品,科普文章,公告,说明文,广告书报,杂志中关于一般性话题的简短文章并回答相关问题.

二. 考核要求

考生应能做到以下几点:

1. 理解语篇主旨大意
2. 理解文中具体信息
3. 根据上下文提供的线索推测生词的词义
4. 作出简单判断和推理
5. 理解文章基本结构
6. 理解作者的观点、意图和态度
7. 根据文中提供的信息用恰当的词语完成与短文内容相关的图表.

二. 真题分析与高分技巧

1. 培养解题能力

1. 培养词形转换能力,如:用所给词语的适当形式填空.

The car rushed at the bridge at astonishing speed. (astonish)



The postal service here is very unreliable. (serve)

The exam was relatively easy. (relative)

2. 培养英语释义与概括能力, 如: 根据提示用意义相同的词完成句子, 每格一词。

The boy felt uncomfortable with his new classmates (not comfortable)

If you ignore your diet, trouble will follow. (pay no attention to)

At any rate, the medical supplies will reach you within a week.

(things such as food, medicines, etc. that are needed by a group of people)

3. 培养逆向思维能力。

如: 根据提示用意义相反的词完成句子, 每空格填一词。

I am unable to cycle to school because my bicycle is broken.

(able)

There has been a steady decrease in population in this city.

(increase)

The rough road made the car vibrate. (smooth)

4. 培养语篇结构解读能力。

如: 利用完形填空和阅读理解的文章, 在阅读后, 写出文章主题, 段落大意, 自己动手绘制语篇结构图, 以增强语篇结构解读的能力。

二、学会查证

1. 带着问题有意识地在细节处和关键处做标记;

2. 留意最醒目的字眼。(time, age, number, place ...)

3. 根据信息词搜索所需的内容, 如:



① 5W: who, what, when, where, why, how

② 时间先后: first, then, after that, next, finally.

④ 因果: because, thus, lead to, caused by, as a result of, alike, common

⑤ 比较: similarly, differently, likeness, unlike, but, while, however, instead, on the contrary

三、学会组织表述信息

1. 用名词所有格“'s”代替of, 如:

citizen's longer living 代替 the longer living of citizen

2. 词性转换, 如:

原文: Taking a gap year and going to university offer valuable experience in similar ways ...

转换成表格中: Similarities between taking a gap year and going to university ...

3. 句子结构转换.

原文: One likely development will be a gradual change in the family unit; the other likely development will be a change in the proportion of the nation's workforce.

转换成三个词以内的名词短语: family unit change; workforce proportion change.

4. 易逆原词来释义, 如:

原文: ...The ministry warned that thefts and robberies inside or near banks rose rapidly, with the victims mostly women and elderly people...



It advised people not to take large amount of cash while which always witnesses a large number of crimes.

转换成表格中. Theft and robbery accounted for 80%; women and ~~and~~ elderly people were mostly targeted for; people were advised to avoid taking a large amount of cash.

四、学会归纳、概括

原文第一段. By the end of this decade, more than half of the world's population will live in cities. Urbanization brings many problems to almost every country in the world, among which energy is one of the most serious one.

概括成题目: Title: Urbanization and development.

复习时注意积累一些概括性的词汇, 它们的特征是:

- 1) 概括性, 在最大限度上覆盖栏内信息
- 2) 针对性, 不能太大也不能太小, 量体裁衣, 大小适度
- 3) 醒目性, 注意措词, 如:

reason(s), cause(s), result(s), effect(s), consequence(s), advice, suggestion(s), opinion(s), problem(s), measure(s), solution(s), way(s), form(s), feature(s), characteristics, type(s), advantage(s), disadvantage(s), difference(s), similarities, name(s), age, time, cost, event(s), purposes.

五、由一种词类转换成另一种词类.

1. 动词转化为名词. 这类动词变为名词后, 常跟 have, make, take 等词搭配表示一个动作.

have a look (talk, wash, swim, rest, dream, laugh, ride, dance, interview, etc.)



make a study (guess, visit, call, change, answer, reply, promise, request, etc.)

take a seat (drive, look, bath, etc)

2. 表具体实物的名词可转化为动词.

{ a drop of water (水)
water the flowers (浇)

{ a map of Europe (地图)
map the South Pole (绘制地图)

{ a bicycle chain (链条)
chain a boat to a tree (拴住)

3. 表身体部位或某类人的名词可转化动词.

{ The stone hit him on the head. (头)
Head straight for the factory. (朝向)

The nurse on duty is nursing the patient. (护理)

4. 表抽象概念的名词可转化为动词.

{ Time is a bird for ever on the wing. (时间)
Take a deep breath and I'll time you. (计时)

5. 有些形容词可作动词用.

{ Your watch is five minutes slow. (慢的)
Slow down your car in the crowded streets. (放慢)



{ let's see sit in the shade and get cool. (凉爽)
Open the window to cool the room. (使凉爽)

② 在词根上加前缀构成新词。

前缀	意义	例示
a-	在...上; 至; 在...状态中	aboard, asleep
anti-	反, 反对; 对立	antinuclear
auto-	自己的; 自动的	autobiography
by/bye-	次要的; 侧的; 边缘	bypass
co-	和...一起, 共同.	coexist
de-	...反义; 除掉, 脱离	devalue
dis-	不, 非; 相反	disability
im/in/il/ir-	不, 无, 非	impossible
inter-	在...之间; 相互	interact
mis-	坏; 错; 不; 无	misuse
non-	无, 没有	non-stop
over-	超过; 上面	overbalance
post-	后, 以后	postgraduate
re-	又, 再, 重新	reconsider
self-	自身的, 对自己	self-respect
tele-	远距离的	telephone
un-	不, 未, 非, 相反	uncertain
under-	在...下; 较小; 不足	underline

在词根上加后缀构成新词。

人为词

后缀	意义	例示
-ability/-ibility	能力; 可能性	disability
-ary/-ery/-ory/-ty/-y	行为; 场所; 技术	discovery
-an/-ian/-ean	精通...的人	historian



Date

No. 251

后缀	意义	例子
-ance / -ence	...的行为, 状况, 过程	absence
-ation / -tion / -sion	...的行为, 状态	definition
-dom	...的状态, 地位, 群体	kingdom
-ee	受动者, 受害者	employee
-eer	与...有关的人	engineer
-ing	...的动作, 结果	fighting
-ity / -ty	...的性质, 状态	beauty
-logy / -ology	学科, 科目	biology
-ment	...的行为, 结果, 过程	achievement
-ness	...的状态, 性质, 程度	carelessness
-ship	...的状态, 职位, 地位	membership
-th	...的动作, 过程, 性质	depth
-ure	...的行动, 过程, 结果	gesture

2. 形容词

后缀	意义	例子
-able / -ible	可...的; 值得...的	available invisible
-al / -ial	具有...特征的; 属于...的	actual
-an / -an / -ean	具有...特征的人; 与...有联系的	urban
-ary	像...的; ...的性质	temporary
-ory	...的性质; 起...的作用	satisfactory
-ant / -ent	是...的; 做...的	constant
-ate / -ate / -ute	充满...的; 有...性质的	absolute
-ey / -y	充满...的; 有...倾向的	funny
 -ful	充满...的; 易...的	cheerful
-ing	正在...的; 让...的	amazing

Date

No. 252

后缀	意义	例示
-ish	...国家的; 像...的; 近...的	bookish
-ive	...倾向的, 有...性质的	creative
-less	无...的, 没有	useless
-ly	有...特征的; 性别的	lovely
-ous	具有...性质的; 多...的	curious
-some	引起...的; 有...倾向的	handsome

3. 副词

后缀	意义	例示
-ly	以...方式	absolutely
-ward(s)	向...地(方向)	afterwards
-wise	以...方式, 朝...方向	likewise

4. 动词

后缀	意义	例示
-ate	赋予某物; 给予...性质	accumulate
-en	使成为, 使得	blacken
-ful-ify	使得...成; 使...化	purify
-ish	表动作	accomplish
-ize/-ise	使...化; 以...方式	organize

常用动词词根

词根	意义	例示
-act	行动	act
-clude	关闭	conclude
-duce	领导/引导	introduce



Date

No. 253

词根	意义	例词
-fer	运载, 负担	differ
-form	形成	perform
-lect	选, 收	collect
-port	携带, 拿	support
-pose	置放	purpose
-spect	看	suspect
-struct	建筑, 建造	construct
-tend	张开, 伸, 打	extend

七做题步骤

① 时间充裕, 文章较短

首先: 略读, 快速浏览全文, 理清文章基本结构, 抓住文章的框架和每段大意

其次: 扫读, 扫读图表, 分析表格结构和内容, 准确定位题目的要求, 以便带着问题找读。

再次: 细读, 深入理解文章内容, 分析整合信息, 准确表述, 归纳概括, 转换信息正确表述。

最后: 复查。通观全文, 复查检查。

* 时间较紧, 文章较长 ⇒ 推荐做法。

首先: 扫读。同上, 了解图表大致结构和文章结构

其次: 根据题目定位, 直接由图表的定位。



再次: 细读, 同上。

最后: 审题, 转化词。

真题再现

1. (2011-江苏)

When Should a Leader Apologize and When Not?

Why Difficult?

When we wrong someone we know, even not intentionally, we are generally expected to apologize so as to improve the situation. But when we're acting as leaders, the circumstances are different. The act of apology is carried out not merely at the level of the individual but also at the level of the institution. It is a performance in which every expression matters and every word becomes part of the public record. Refusing to apologize can be smart, or it can be stupid. So, readiness to apologize can be seen as a sign of strong character or as a sign of weakness. A successful apology can turn hate into personal and organizational harmony—while an apology that is too little, too late, or too obviously strategic can bring on individual and institutional ruin. What, then, is to be done? How can leaders decide if and when to apologize publicly?

Why Now?

The question of whether leaders should apologize publicly has never been more urgent. During the last decade or so, the United States in particular has developed an apology culture—apologies of all kinds and for all sorts of wrongdoings are made far more frequently than before. More newspaper writers have written about the growing importance of public apologies. More articles, cartoons, advice columns, and radio and television programs have similarly dealt with the subject of private apologies.

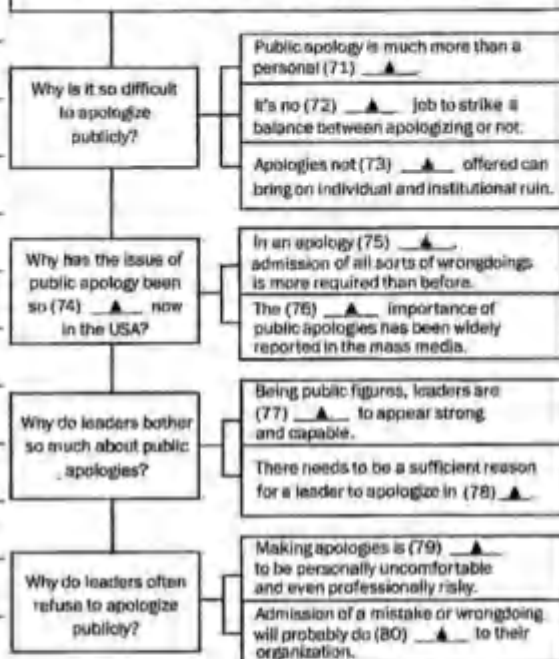
Why Bother?

Why do we apologize? Why do we ever put ourselves in situations likely to be difficult, embarrassing, and even risky? Leaders who apologize publicly could be an easy target. They are expected to appear strong and capable. And whenever they make public statements of any kind, their individual and institutional reputations are in danger. Clearly, then, leaders should not apologize often or lightly. For a leader to express apology, there needs to be a good, strong reason. Leaders will publicly apologize if and when they think the costs of doing so are lower than the costs of not doing so.

Why Refuse?

Why is it that leaders so often refuse to apologize, even when a public apology seems to be in order? Their reasons can be individual or institutional. Because leaders are public figures, their apologies are likely to be personally uncomfortable and even professionally risky. Leaders may also be afraid that admission of a mistake will damage or destroy the organization for which they are responsible. There can be good reasons for hanging tough in tough situations, as we shall see, but it is a high-risk strategy.

When Should a Leader Apologize and When Not?



扫读全文,发现译动手部分和题目

是按照这个部分进行题目的,然后细读原文

2. (2010·江苏)

For more than twenty years scientists have been seeking to understand the mystery of the "sixth sense" of direction. By trying out ideas and solving problems one by one, they are now getting closer to one answer.

One funny idea is that animals might have a built-in compass (指南针).

Our earth itself is a big magnet (磁体). So a little magnetic needle that swings freely lines itself with the big earth magnet to point north and south. When people discovered that idea about a thousand years ago and invented the compass, it allowed sailors to navigate (航海) on ocean voyages, even under cloudy skies.

Actually the idea of the living compass came just from observing animals in nature. Many birds migrate twice a year between their summer homes and winter homes. Some of them fly for thousands of kilometers and mostly at night. Experiments have shown that some birds can recognize star patterns. But they can keep on course even under cloudy skies. How can they do that?

A common bird that does not migrate but is great at finding its way home is the homing pigeon. Not all pigeons can find their way home. Those that can are very good at it, and they have been widely studied.

One interesting experiment was to attach little magnets to the birds' heads to block their magnetic sense—just as a loud radio can keep you from hearing a call to dinner. On sunny days, that did not fool the pigeons. Evidently they can use the sun to tell which way they are going. But on cloudy days, the pigeons with magnets could not find their way. It was as if the magnets had blocked their magnetic sense.

Similar experiments with the same kind of results were done with honeybees. These insects also seem to have a special sense of direction.

In spite of the experiments, the idea of an animal compass seemed pretty extraordinary. How would an animal get the magnetic stuff for a compass.

An answer came from an unexpected source. A scientist was studying bacteria that live in the mud of ponds and marshes. He found accidentally little rod-like bacteria that all swam together in one direction—north.

Further study showed that each little bacterium had a chain of dense particles inside, which proved magnetic. The bacteria had made themselves into little magnets that could line up with the earth's magnet.

The big news was that a living thing, even a simple bacterium, can make magnetite. That led to a search to see whether animals might have it. By using a special instrument called magnetometer, scientists were able to find magnetite in bees and birds, and even in fish. In each animal, except for the bee, the magnetic stuff was always in or closer to the brain.

Thus, the idea of a built-in animal compass began to seem reasonable.

The Magnetic Sense — The Living Compass	
Passage outline	Supporting details
The existence of the earth magnet and the invention of the navigating compass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◇ Our earth is a big magnet and a little freely (1) ▲ magnetic needle lines itself with the earth magnet to point north and south. ◇ (2) ▲ on the idea above, the navigating compass was invented.
The possibility of birds' built-in compasses	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◇ One piece of evidence is the (3) ▲ of many birds between their summer homes and winter homes. ◇ Birds can recognize star patterns on clear nights and keep on course (4) ▲ under cloudy skies.
The (5) ▲ on pigeons' and bees' built-in compasses	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◇ Little magnets were tied to the pigeons' heads to (6) ▲ their magnetic sense. ◇ The pigeons' magnetic sense seemed to be affected on (7) ▲ days. ◇ Similar things with the same results were done with bees.
The (8) ▲ of the magnetic stuff for the animal compass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◇ Little rod-like bacteria were found by chance to swim together in the direction of (9) ▲. ◇ Some animals had a chain of dense magnetic particles in or close to the (10) ▲ inside their bodies.



向处考的都死转折词时之市, 可取折处的原原性。

2010 的题明显属于文章 B, 但答案却不属 B。

3. (2009.3.26)

Communication Principles

How you see yourself can make a great difference in how you communicate. "Every individual exists in a continually changing world of experience of which he (or she) is the center". Many communication scholars and social scientists believe that people are products of how others treat them and of the messages others send them. But every day we experience the centrality of our selves in communication. A student, for instance, may describe a conflict with a teacher as unfair treatment: "I know my teacher doesn't like the fact that I don't agree with his opinions, and that's why he gave me such a poor grade in that class." The teacher might say the opposite. Each person may believe that he is correct and that the other person's view is wrong.

The concept of self originates in communication. Through verbal and nonverbal symbols, a child learns to accept roles in response to the expectations of others. You establish self-image. The sort of person you believe you are, by how others think of you. Positive, negative, and neutral messages that you receive from others all play a role in determining who you are. Communication itself is probably best understood as a dialogue process. Our understanding of communication comes from our interactions with other people. In a more obvious way, communication involves others in the sense that a competent communicator considers what the other person needs and expects when selecting messages to share. So, the communication begins with the self, as defined largely by others, and involves others, as defined largely by the self.

Communication Occurs almost every minute of your life. If you are not communicating with yourself (thinking, planning, reacting to the world around you), you are observing others and drawing inferences from their behavior. Even if the other person did not intend a message for you, you gather observations and draw specific conclusions. A person yawns and you believe that person is bored with your message. A second person looks away from you and you conclude that person is not listening to you. A third person smiles (perhaps because of a memory of a joke he heard recently) and you believe that he is attracted to you. We are continually picking up meanings from others' behaviors and we are constantly providing behaviors that have communicative value for them.

More often than not, you may have hurt someone accidentally and you may have tried to explain that you did not mean that. You may have told the other person that you were

sorry for your statement. You may have made a joke out of your rude statement. Nonetheless, your comment remains both in the mind of the other person and in your own mind. You cannot go back in time and erase your messages to others. Communication cannot be reversed (倒退), nor can it be repeated. When you tried to re-create the atmosphere, the conversation, and the setting, nothing seemed right. Your second experience with a similar setting and person made far different results.

Paragraph outline	Supporting Details
Communication begins with the self	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● People are somewhat products of others' treatment and messages. ● We are always (1) ▲ in communication with others.
Communication (2) ▲ others	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Experiences of others help children learn to accept roles. ● Messages from others help you (3) ▲ who you are. ● Needs and (4) ▲ of others should be considered.
Communication (5) ▲ everywhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● We are communicating with ourselves by thinking, planning and reacting to the outside world. ● We are always (6) ▲ other people by observing even if they do not intend any message for you. ● We are constantly collecting meanings from others' (7) ▲. ● We are constantly (8) ▲ meanings by what we do.
Communication cannot be reversed nor repeated	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● You may explain what you have done, but you cannot (9) ▲ what remains in the other person's mind. ● You may redo the conversation, but you (10) ▲ achieve the same results.

扫题, 显然一段对应一题所在格, 文章要耐心读

本文难度很高, 近似于阅读题3, 很多要归纳

转化, 而分理解, 值得好好回味。

4. (2011·江苏苏锡常镇等·次调研)

Canada's wealth comes from the exploitation of its rich natural resources and from the work of its citizens. Canadians are employed in a variety of jobs. All of these jobs can be grouped into one of three categories: extractive industries, manufacturing industries and service industries.

Industries that take raw materials from the natural environment are called extractive or primary industries. Canada has a wealth of natural resources. The extractive industries that have been developed to exploit these natural resources make an important contribution to the wealth of our economy. Without these extractive industries and the money they bring from other countries, Canada's economy could not exist in its present form. Yet only a small percentage of Canada's labour force work in extractive industries. Extractive industries rely on labour-saving machines instead of human labour.

Manufacturing industries process the products of extractive industries into finished products. Manufacturing industries transform raw materials into many different forms to be used by consumers or by other companies. This processing may be done in one or more stages. For example, iron ore is transformed into steel in factories. This is called primary manufacturing. The steel is then sent to companies for further processing into cars, mining equipment, machines, nails, and other products—such as bicycle frames. This is called secondary manufacturing.

Manufacturing industries are located in many towns and cities across Canada. Companies try to build their factories in densely populated areas because they want to near the people who buy their products. If they locate near their customers, then they save money on shipping costs. Manufacturing industries provide more jobs to Canadians than do extractive industries. Yet the number of people employed in manufacturing is still small in comparison to the third category, services. As with extractive industries, manufacturing process use many machines that require relatively few workers.

Service industries provide services needed by the extractive and manufacturing industries, and by society in general. Without these services, society could not operate. The majority of Canadian workers do not produce "goods" in their jobs. Instead, they provide "services" for others. The range of services is very great and includes such things as retailing, office work, education, health care, communications

government, transportation, and personal services.

Service industries in one form or another are spread over the entire country. In every community there are stores, banks, schools, police forces, and dozens of other services.

The majority of service industries are found in town and cities because services are provided for people and there are many more people in urban areas.

Canada's economy depends upon the creation of jobs in all three types of industry.

Introduction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● All <u>1</u> can be divided into three categories: extractive industries, manufacturing industries and service industries.
Extractive industries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Extractive industries are also called primary industries, which are <u>2</u> with the exploitation of raw materials from the natural environment.
<u>3</u> industries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Manufacturing industries <u>4</u> raw materials into products, which can be used by people or companies. ● Manufacturing industries can be grouped into primary manufacturing and <u>5</u> manufacturing. ● Primary manufacturing <u>6</u> steel from iron ore for further processing. ● Secondary manufacturing will then use the steel to make products like cars, bikes, etc. for people to use.
Service industries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Service industries provide services the other two industries need. Without these services, our society cannot <u>7</u>. ● Service industries provide jobs for shop assistants, office <u>8</u>, teachers, doctors, and many others. ● Service industries mainly provide services for <u>9</u>.
Closing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Our society is <u>10</u> on all three types of industry.

1 答案正

1. 1. 2.
- 【语篇解读】 本文为说明文。全文共分四个版块，就“作为领导，为何道歉这么困难，何时道歉，如何道歉和为何要拒绝道歉”这四个话题展开了说明。
- 【语篇解读】 本文为议论文。二十多年以来，科学家们一直在努力探索着人类运用第六感识别方向之谜，通过一个个实验（如家鸽、蜜蜂）之后，答案渐渐浮出水面。
1. performance/act/activity 归纳概括题。第一段第二句“**But when we're acting as leaders, the circumstances are different. The act of apology is carried out not merely at the level of the individual but also at the level of the institution. It is a performance in which every expression matters and every word becomes part of the public record.**”这句话的意思是“但当我们作为领导时，情况就不同了。道歉不仅是一种个人行为，而且还是一种公信力的表现。道歉成为一种表现。在这种表现中，我们可以从中抽出“performance”这个词。由此延伸出“act, activity”这两个近义词。
1. swinging 由第三段第二句可知此处指自由摇摆的磁针，所以用 swinging 作定语，修饰名词 needle。
2. easy 归纳概括题。题目说的是：“在道歉与不道歉之间找到一个平衡点不是一件_____的工作。”结合第一段“**Refusing to apologize can be smart, or it can be stupid.**”拒绝道歉有可能是聪明的，也有可能成为愚蠢的行为”得出结论：是否道歉是一件“不容易的”事情。
2. Based 由第三段第三句可知：当人们发现磁针可以随着地球磁场摆动时，就发明了指南针。based on 以……为基础。
3. properly/appropriately/successfully/rightly 归纳概括题。根据第二段倒数第二句中“**while an apology that is too little, too late, or too obviously strategic can bring on individual and institutional ruin.**”道歉诚意不足，不及时或带着太明显的策略性都会给个人形象或公信力造成毁灭性的打击”判断出一下信息：“不适当的道歉”，那么与之对应的英文单词有“properly, rightly, successfully”等。
3. migration 由第五段第一句可知：鸟一年迁徙两次，又因为 of 前应该用名词，所以答案为 migration。
4. urgent 细节题。由第二段第一句 The question of whether leaders should apologize publicly has never been more urgent. 可知，在美国，领导人是否应该公开道歉的问题从来没有这么迫切过。从中得到“urgent”一词。
4. avoid 由第五段倒数第二句可知答案。
5. experiments/tests/study/research 由文章第七到第十一段可知文章叙述了对嵌入鸽子和蜜蜂体内的指南针的研究或实验。
6. block 由第七段第一句可知：小的磁体被绑到鸽子的头部目的是阻断它们的磁场感应。
7. cloudy 由第七段倒数第二句可推出：多云的日子可能影响鸽子的磁场感应。
8. discovery 文章最后两段主要叙述了对动物磁场的发现，of 前需用名词，故用 discovery。
9. north 由文章第十段最后一句可知答案为 north。
10. brain (s) 由文章倒数第二段最后一句可知答案。
- 3.
1. self-centered/subjective 据第一段第四句 **But every day we experience the centrality of our selves in communication** 可知我们在与别人的交流中总是“以自我为中心”或“主观的”。注意词形转换。
1. self-centered/subjective 据第一段第四句 **But every day we experience the centrality of our selves in communication** 可知我们在与别人的交流中总是“以自我为中心”或“主观的”。注意词形转换。
2. involves 据右栏信息可知应填 involves。
3. determining/define/know/understand 据第二段最后一句可知，注意词形转换及同义表达。
4. expectations/hopes/desires/wishes 据第二段倒数第二句 **considers what the other person needs and expects when selecting messages to share.** 可知，注意词形变化。
5. occurs/happens/exists/arises 据第三段第一句 **Communication occurs almost every minute of your life.** 及右栏信息可知应填 occurs 及其同义词。
6. reading/understanding/knowing 据第三段第二句 **Even if the other person did not intend a message for you, you gather observations and draw specific conclusions.** 可知，我们通过观察来“了解”别人。
7. behaviors/action(s)/activities 据第三段最后一句 **We are continually picking up meanings from others' behaviors** 可知
8. conveying/expressing 据第三段最后一句 **and we are constantly providing behaviors that have communicative value for them.** 可知，我们不断地通过自己的行为来传达。
9. erase/remove/delete/change 据最后一句 **You cannot go back in time and erase your messages to others.** 可知。
10. can't/cannot
10. Harm/damage 细节题。由第四段倒数第二句可知，“do damage to”的近义短语还有“do harm to”。

4.

1. jobs 根据文章中的 All of these jobs can be grouped into three categories 可知答案, 其中 be grouped into 相当于 be divided into.
2. associated/connected 根据文章大意可知冶金工业就是从自然环境中获取原材料, 换言之冶金工业与从自然环境中获取原材料有着密切的联系, 因此用 associated with 或者 connected with.
3. Manufacturing 文章提及三大产业, 冶金工业, 制造业和服务业, 提到的第二种产业应该是制造业, 因此用 manufacturing.
4. process/transform/turn 根据文章第三段内容 Manufacturing industries process the products of extractive industries into finished products. Manufacturing industries transform raw materials into many different forms to be used by consumers or by other companies. 可知制造业就是把原材料转化成各种产品, 因此可以用 process, transform 或 turn.
5. secundar 根据文章第三段中的 This is called primary manufacturing... This is called secondary manufacturing. 可知制造业可分成基础制造业和第二制造业.
6. makes 钢铁是从铁矿石中提炼出来的, 也就是 make steel from iron ore.
7. operate/function 根据文章倒数第三段的 Without these services, society could not operate 可知没有服务业社会就无法运转, 因此用 operate (运转), function 与之同义.
8. workers 答案来源于原文中的 office work, 从事 office work 的人就是 office workers.
9. people 根据文章原句 services are provided for people 可知答案.
10. based/dependent 根据文章最后一段 Canada's economy depends upon the creation of jobs in all three types of industry. 可知答案. 此处 depend upon = be dependent on = be based on.

Tip: 由以上题目, 相信大家也已经看出来, 做托福型阅读无需知道整篇文章讲了什么, 只要每一个空格对应的那一 (两) 句话可以明白透彻, 归纳出需要的词汇即可, 这是最快速的做题法.

如果定位到某句后找不出答案, 就找一下下同.

若仍找不到, 就可以考虑要自己归纳!



专题六 书面表达

一大纲解读与话题分析

一、题型介绍

写作部分测试学生用英语进行书面表达的能力,所占分值为25分,建议考生用时为25~30min。一般考试要求的字数为150左右。主要体裁有记叙文、说明文和应用文。提供的情景形式有图画、图表、提纲、短文等。内容是日常生活中常见的事件或现象。

近几年,高考作文大都采用情景作文的方式,主要采用的是记叙为主的应用文写作,内容贴近同学们的日常生活。

一般的出题形式是半开放式,写作前有英语说明、表格或图画提示,有字数限制。超出或达不到字数要求都要扣分,一般140~170是可接受的。最后会有学生自己发挥的余地。概括起来有以下几种特点:

1. 命题形式多样化

图的图表、图画或文段的命题形式,要求学生根据文段、图表或图画的提示按词数要求完成英文短文。

2. 文体类型丰富

记叙文、议论文、漫画、图表题等。

3. 文章的关注点: 高级词汇、句法结构、惯用语的恰当运用。

4. 写作题的要求仍是半开放形式。

二、考核要求

1. 思想表达

1) 表达中心思想

2) 表达重要或特征信息

3) 表达观点,态度。



2. 篇章组织

1) 围绕所给题目叙述、议论或描述,突出重点

2) 逐句地组句成段,组段成篇

3) 结构清晰,条理清楚

3. 语言运用

1) 对同一意义有各种表达方式

2) 运用正确的词汇、语法、标点符号

3) 使用衔接手段表达句子间的关系(对比、原因、结果、程度、目的等)

4. 写作格式

^{运用}通过正确的符合英文表达习惯的写作格式。

* Tips: 大家要知道,高考阅卷老师在每篇文章上停留的时间是非常短的,那么在最短的时间内如何才能吸引阅卷老师的眼球呢?

1. 字迹工整,虽不一定写的很好看,但一定要工整,试想,如果写的潦草,老师在硕大的屏幕上看的眼睛都花了,时间又紧迫(当时我的老师说每篇作文只有30s阅卷时间= =),第一印象就差,是不可能有很高分的。我们的作文是给别人看的,自然要百分之百让“阅卷”者满意,服务越周到越好,一旦清晰的作文让老师心情愉悦,打分也会高~)

2. 首尾段使用考前已准备好的好句子,先声夺人,作好总结。

由于阅卷时间短,一般情况下,老师着重看的是首段和尾段,开篇就为声夺人,中间不要跑题,没什么语法错误,尾段巧用几个亮点句式或俗语等,已经很不错了,基本能得到一个中上分数。



3. 文章结构清楚,主体部分用总分结构,首句点明中心。

还是由于阅卷时间短,老师看主体时可能只来得及看向那第一句最后一

句自然是重点,首句直接开门见山点明中心意思,这符合老师的“口味”。

4. 句子通顺,无语法错误。使用高级词汇,复杂句式,用各种表达方式表达同一含义。

句子通顺,无语法错误是获得基本分的基础,此外单词拼错也要扣分的。

高考作文评分,加分,尤其是中等文章和好文章的区别,就在于是否有高级亮点词汇,有没有用复杂句式,至少得有4,5种不同句型。

一篇文章中可能会多次用到同一单词,会让人读得无趣,也是词汇匮乏的表现,^{*}注意同义词的替换,用高级词汇替代第一反应词,如:

好的: 最好是用 good / nice / ok

升级词汇: positive, favorable, rosy, promising, perfect, superior, pleasure, excellent, outstanding,

5. 连接词要常用。(后面详细列举)

表顺序的: Firstly, Second, Thirdly ...

表递进的: On one hand, on the other hand ...

in addition, additionally, moreover, what's more ...

表转折的: although, however, nevertheless

三、江苏卷高考评分标准

1. 评分原则

1) 评分时,先根据文章的内容和语言初步确定其所属档次,然后以该档次的要求来衡量,确定或调整档次,最后给分。

2) 词数过少或过多的,从总分中扣去2分。

3) 评分时应注意的主要内容: 内容要点、应用词汇和语法结构的数量和质量、准确性及上下文的连贯性。



4) 拼写与标点符号是语言准确性的一个方面。评分时应视其对实际

的影响程度予以考虑。英美拼写及词汇因派位可接受。

5) 如书里较差以至影响交际, 将分数降低一个档次!!!

Tip: 高考作文可钻的大空子就是评分标准中对于文章思想性无特别要求。那就是说, 只要不离题, 内容并无大重要之处, 大家不必花时间在内容的创新上。这与语文的作文有本质区别。比如一篇建议型作文, 即便想不出什么特别的建议, 也不用太担心, 只需用华丽的词汇和句式包装起来!

2. 各档次的给分范围和原则 (满分为25分)

<p>第五档 21~25分</p>	<p>完全完成了试题规定的任务。 覆盖所有内容要点。 应用了较多的语法结构和词汇。 语法结构或词汇方面有些许错误, 但为尽力使用较复杂结构或较高级词汇所致; 具备较强的语言运用能力。 有效地使用了语句间的连接成分, 使全文结构紧凑。 完全达到了预期的写作目的。</p>
<p>第四档 16~20分</p>	<p>完成了试题规定的任务。 虽漏掉一两个次重点, 但覆盖所有主要内容。 应用的语法结构和词汇能满足任务的要求; 语法结构或词汇方面应用基本准确, 些许错误主要是因尝试较复杂结构或较高级词汇所致。应用简单的语句间的连接成分, 使全文结构紧凑。 达到了预期的写作目的。</p>
<p>第三档 11~15分</p>	<p>基本完成了试题规定的任务。 虽漏掉一些内容, 但覆盖所有主要内容。 应用的语法结构和词汇能满足任务的要求。 有一些语法结构或词汇方面的错误, 但不影响理解。 应用简单的语句间的连接成分, 使全文内容连贯。 整体而言, 基本达到了预期的写作目的。</p>
<p>第二档 6~10分</p>	<p>未恰当基本完成了试题规定的任务。 漏掉或未描述清楚一些主要内容, 写了一些无关内容。 语法结构单调、词汇项目有限。 有一些语法结构或词汇方面的错误, 影响了对写作内容的理解。 较少使用语句间的连接成分, 内容缺少连贯性。 信息未能清楚地传达给读者。</p>

第一档 1~5分	未完成了试题规定的任务。 明显漏掉主要内容，写了一些无关内容，原因可能是未理解试题要求。 语法结构单调、词汇项目有限。 较多语法结构或词汇方面的错误，影响了对写作内容的理解。 缺乏语句间的连接成分，内容不连贯。 信息未能清楚地传达给读者。
0分	未能清楚地传达给读者信息：内容太少，无法评判；写的内容均与所要求内容无关或所写内容无法看清。

二. 解题方略

1. 掌握五大句型

1. 主+谓(十状) (S.V) *这里的谓动词是不及物动词, 后面无宾语.

He smiles. 但有时可以有状语.

The sun rises in the east.

2. 主+系+表 (S.V.P)

He is an expert in computers.

The garden smells pleasant.

*常用系动词有:

be, become, look, turn, appear, get, feel, grow, seem, remain;
 come, fall, hold, keep, smell, sound, taste.

3. 主+谓+宾 (S.V.O)

I like sports.

They wanted to have a rest.



*这里的谓动词是及物动词, 后面一定要加宾语.

4. 主+谓+双宾 (SVOO)

Would you buy me a gift? / Would you buy a gift for me?

She bought me a shirt.

* 这类谓语动词有: teach, get, award, lend, rent, buy, pay, hand, recommend.

5. 主+谓+宾+宾补 (SVOC)

The young couple watched their baby play on the grass land.

The news made me happy

President appointed John manager of Marketing.

* 常带复合宾语结构的及物动词有:

elect, feel, find, keep, get, have, hear, imagine, let, make, notice, see, smell, start, watch, appoint, believe, call, catch, allow, ask, cause, consider, expect, know, tell, think, want, wish, listen to, look at ...

2. 巧用复合句

在简单句的基础上, 通过并列和从属, 构成了英语中的复合句。复合句可分为并列句、从属句和并列从属句。并列句由 and 族, but 族, or 族并列连词连接。从属句由各种从属连词连接, 分为状语从句、定语从句和名词性从句, 其中状语从句分类最为复杂。并列从属句是既运用并列手段又运用从属手段的复合句

1) 并列句的并列连词



* And 族并列连词:

both ... and, not only ... but also ..., neither ... nor, and (then), so

* OR 族并列连词

or, either... or..., or else

* BUT 族并列连词

not... but..., while, but

二) 从属句的引导词

* 状语从句的引导词:

表时间: ① 同时: when, while, as, as soon as, the moment, the day/month/year, directly, immediately, hardly/scarcely... when..., no sooner... than...

② 先后: before, after, till, until, when, since, next time

补充表同时的: in/on while, in the meantime

表地点: where wherever

表方式: as if/though, (just) as

表原因: because, for, since, as, now that, seeing that, for the reason that
owing to

表结果: so... that..., such... that..., so that, as a consequence, consequently
thus, hence, therefore, accordingly

表目的: so that, in order that

表比较: as... as..., than..., the same... as..., not so... as..., equally,

like, similarly, likewise, in the same way, in the same manner.



表让步: though, although, no matter wh-, whatever, even if/though

in spite of..., admittedly, whatever may happen

表条件: as / so long as, on addition that, unless, so far as =

(以下是连接词)

表强调: indeed, apparently, oddly enough, significantly, interestingly,
 undoubtedly, above all, obviously, especially, clearly

表对比: on the contrary, in contrast, whereas, conversely, nevertheless,
 unlike

表列举: for instance, take ... for example, to illustrate

[不要再用 for example 了 ...] 这三个都是好词汇

表顺序: first, second, third → 经典词

to begin with / first of all / in the first place / first and most important
 then / next

finally / above all / last but not least

表解释: in other words, as a matter of fact, that is = namely

表递进: besides, furthermore, as well as, additionally, what's more, in addition

表总结: on the whole, to sum up, in brief, in summary, to summarize
 in short, to conclude

* 定语从句的引导词



关系代词: who, whom, which, that, as

关系副词: when, where, why

★ 名词性从句的引导词.

that, whether, if, what, which, when, where, why, how, whatever, whichever, whenever, wherever, however

3. 灵活运用固定结构.

1) It is (high/about) time 是该...的时候了

2) It is + adj. (kind/nice/foolish/...) of sb to do sth

3) It is + adj. (important/necessary/impossible...) for sb. to do sth.

4) I don't think/believe/expect/... that 从句

5) What is sth/sb. like? / What does sth/sb. look like?

6) It's no good/use doing sth

7) It is / has been ... since ...

8) It is said / reported / believed / suggested ... + that 从句

4. 掌握扩展句子的手段.

1) 增添修饰成分

① I am a student



I am a boy student in class 2, Grade 3, No. 1 Middle School.

② The actor acted in the play.

The young actor from Hunan once acted very well in the history play.

② 运用并列和从属手段

试比较:

① It must have rained last night.

It must have rained last night, for the ground is wet.

② I like music.

I like music while my brother like sport.

5. 熟練进行句型转换

① 简单句和从属句的转换

① I spoke to the woman just now. She can speak several foreign languages.

→ The woman to whom I spoke just now can speak several foreign languages.

② He got up late this morning. He didn't catch the first bus.

→ He didn't catch the ^{first} bus because he got up late this morning.

② 并列句与从属句和非谓语结构之间的转换

① The fish can eat a person in two minutes and they leave only bones.

→ The fish can eat a person in two minutes, leaving only bones.

② He was not allowed to see his sick mother in the hospital. That made him sad.



→ His not being allowed to see his sick mother in the hospital

made him sad.

6. 英语中表示停顿的标点符号

1. 句号 (Full stop/period)

句号表示说完一句话后的停顿,用在句子末尾。英语句号的写法是一个是实心点,有别于汉语的空心点。所以英语作文不能随便点点,以免造成误解。除一句话结束时用句号以外,在省略语后面也用句号。和汉语不同,英语中的句点表示一个基本句型已经结束,而汉语的句号表示一个意思已经完整。如:

我是老师而他是学生。(I am a teacher. He is a student. 或 I am a teacher while/but he is a student.)

e.g. (=for example)

2. 逗号 (Comma)

逗号表示一句话没有说完而暂时的停顿,用在句子中间。逗号的主要作用有:

(1) 当两个成分或者句子并列时,需用并列连词,当三个或者三个以上的成分或者句子并列时,最后两个句子或者成分需要并列连词,前面的句子或成分可用逗号隔开。

Mary got up early and went to school. 玛丽早早起床去上学。

Mary get up early, dressed herself quickly and went to school. 玛丽早早起床,迅速穿好衣服去上学。

(2) 表示同位语

Kofi Annan, the former Secretary-General of UN, has made great achievements for the world.

联合国前任秘书长安南为世界作出了巨大贡献。

(3) 表示独立成分

The teacher, to tell you the truth, is his father.

(4) 表示句首的状语(非谓语动词做状语,状语从句)

Hearing the good news, the little boy jumped with joy.

听到这则好消息,小男孩高兴地跳了起来。

(5) 表示句首或者句尾的定语从句

As everyone knows, he is the winner of the English contest.

众所周知,他是英语竞赛的冠军。

(6) 表示称呼语

Lily, close the door. 丽丽,关门。

(7) 表示演说、书信、口头通知等的称呼语。

Boys and girls,……

(8) 表示直接引出直接引语

The boy shouted. "Be careful!"

3. 分号 (Semicolon)

分号表示比逗号长的停顿。

分号主要用在没有连词的情况下把句子分开。

在 however, therefore 等副词前也常用分号。

They often play basketball; They are getting more and more healthy.

他们经常打篮球;他们变得越来越健康。

4. 引号 (Quotation mark)

引号主要表示直接引语。

引号分为单引号和双引号。在双引号之间再用引号只能跟单引号。

The old man continued. "I was about to go into the lift when I heard a young man shout 'Hands up!'"

老人继续说道:"我刚要进电梯,听到一个年轻人喊到'举起手来!'"

5. 冒号 (Colon)

冒号主要用来引出下文,表示举例、摘录、解释、一引语、对照等。

The whole plan is as follows: 计划全文如下:

What he told me is this: 他告诉我的是:

6. 问号 (Question mark)

问号表示疑问,用于各种疑问句末尾。如:

What are you going to do this weekend? 这周末你要做什么?

7. 感叹号 (Exclamation mark)

感叹号主要用在感叹句、感叹词和表示强烈感情的折使句后面。如:

What a fine day it is today! 今天天气多好!

My god! 天啊!

Be quick, please! 快点!

8. 省略号 (Ellipsis mark)

省略号表示言犹未尽的省略或者相同内容的省略,注意:英语的省略号是三个点,局下。如:

"Help! Help!..." everyone heard the voice from the river over there just now.

"救命!救命!……"刚才每个人都听到从那边河里传来的声音。



二. 考题分析与模板样本

1. 对比观点题型

1. 本题型是要求论述两个对立的观点并给出自己的看法。比如“失败是坏事还是好事”，“少看电视多看书还是多看电视少看书”。

此类文章的基本结构就是：先提出某问题有两种不同观点，先讨论第一个观点，然后讨论相反的观点，最后给出自己的看法。

框架：1. 提出问题有两种观点，阐述观点A

2. 阐述观点B

3. 表明自己的看法。

模板一：

Recently, we have had a heated discussion about _____ (话题). There are two opposite opinions about it. (Some people say A is their favourite.)

视情况是否加这一句，灵活运用。

They hold their view for the reason of _____ (支持A的理由一)。What's

more, _____ (理由二) Moreover, _____ (理由三)。

While others think that B is a better choice in the following

three reasons. Firstly, _____ (支持B的理由一)。Secondly, _____ (理由二)。

Thirdly, _____ (理由三)。



From my point of view, I believe / consider _____ (我的观点)
(绝不用 I think, 太土了!)

Date

No. 17

One reason is that _____ (原因). Additionally, _____ (原因二 或做法).

模板二:

The topic of _____ (主题) is becoming more and more popular recently. As an old saying goes "Every coin has two side", views towards it vary from person to person.

Some believe that _____ (支持A的理由一). In addition, _____ (理由二).
Moreover, _____ (理由三).

On the contrary, others who are against the idea consider that _____ (支持B的理由一). On top of that, they _____ (理由二). Most importantly, they _____ (理由三).

From my perspective, _____ (我的观点). We should adopt a fair attitude towards it ...

范文:



题目: 目前, 网上关于80后、90后的讨论日益激烈, 对此现象, 人们看法不一。

请根据下面的提示写一篇词数为100左右的短文。

一些人认为: 1. 面对各种改革, 应得更困惑, 迷茫。

2. 大多数是独生子女, 娇生惯养

3. 不能独立生活, 心理承受能力差, 缺乏责任感。

另一些人认为: 1. 抓住改革机遇, 教育水平提高, 接受新事物能力强

2. 有较强法律平等、环保意识

3. 面对困难, 有勇气智慧, 如汶川地震和魔兽。

你的观点: 至少两点。

参考词汇: spoil vt. 娇惯

注意: 1. 开头已写好, 不计入总词数

2. 内容可适当发挥, 行文连贯。

(已给) Recently, people have a heated discussion about the two special groups born during the 1980s and 1990s on the Internet. On the whole, there are two different views.

Some believe that people born during 1980s and 1990s are experiencing some reforms of society, which makes them more puzzled and confused about the world around them. In addition, in contrast with the elder generation, most of them are only children, protected and spoiled by their families. Moreover, they can't support themselves and bear heavy pressure, lacking the sense of responsibility.

On the contrary, others who are against the idea consider that these people catch the chance of reform, receiving good education and polishing up their ability to absorb new things. On top



of that, they realize the importance of law, equality and the environment. Most importantly, they have the courage and wisdom to face and overcome the difficulties. the volunteers in the earthquake in Wenchuan being the outstanding representatives. 独立主格

From my perspective, each generation has its own characteristics. Our society should adopt a fair attitude towards them, that is, we should not just blame them but should encourage them as well.

以本题型就是首先给出个观点,说明该观点支持者的理由;然后说明自己反对该观点,并列举几点理由。(此种题型甚多)

模板

Some people believe that (观点一). For instance, they consider

(举例说明). And it will bring them (为他们带来的好处坏处).

Personally, I never think this reason can be the point / its disadvantages are far more than its advantages. For one thing,

(反对理由之一). For another thing, (反对理由二).

From all that I have said, I agree to the thought that (或对本章所讨论主题的看法).



范文.

Some students believe that cheating in the examination is reasonable. For instance, they consider that they have too many examinations, which are ~~too~~ too difficult for them. And if they cheat in the examination, they will get better results to please their parents and teachers.

Personally, this reason can never be the point. For one thing, it breaks the rules of schools to cheat in the examination. For another thing, we students should be honest and try to get good results by studying hard instead of cheating in the examination. What's more, we should improve our learning methods and get well prepared for the examinations.

From ^{= what} all that I have said, I agree to the thought students should be forbidden to cheat in the examination.

二) 阐述主题题型 (此类型考的也较少)

本题型就是要求从一句话或一个主题出发,按照提纲的要求进行论述。其基本结构是:

1. 阐述名言或主题所蕴涵的意义
2. 分析并举例使其更充实
3. 表明自己的立场。

模板.

The good saying / The good old proverb " _____ " (谚语或俗语)



reminds us that _____ (释义). Indeed, we ^{can} learn many things

from it.

First of all, _____ (理由一). For instance, _____ (举例说明).

Secondly, _____ (理由二). Another case is that _____ (举例说明). Further-

more, _____ (理由三).

From my point of view, _____ (我的观点). To sum up, whatever

you do, please keep in mind the say " _____ " (重复运用名言或谚语)

If you fully understand it and apply it to your study or work,

you'll necessarily benefit a lot from it.

范文:

The good saying "We are what we eat." reminds us that it's very significant for us to form healthy eating habits. However, bad eating habits are still very common among us students, which will surely do harm to our health.

To keep fit, first of all, we should have healthy diets. For instance, we can often eat proper amounts of fish, meat, vegetables, fruit as well as main food. Secondly, we'd better have meals regularly.



From my point of view, we should try to develop healthy eating habits to built up a strong body. In short, whatever

you do, please keep in mind the saying "We are what we eat". If you fully understand it and apply it to your life, you'll necessarily benefit a lot from it.

三、解决问题型

总会如何解决问题是每个学生应该掌握的本领。像“如何学好英语”、“如何保护环境”等。此模板的思路就要求大家能从多角度列举出解决问题的各种途径。基本结构：1. 问题现状、严重性。2. 怎么解决。3. 我对解决问题的看法

模板

In recent years, we have to face a problem _____ (某种问题), which is being more and more serious all over the world. First, _____ (说明现状). Second, _____ (举例进一步说明现状).

We should take a series of effective measures to cope with the situation. On one hand, _____ (解决方法一). On the other hand, _____ (解决方法二). Last but not least, _____ (解决方法三).

As for my self, I should take the responsibility to devote my self to _____ (问题的解决) or our future and the lives of our children and our grandchildren will be in risk. Only by making joint efforts can the problem be well resolved.



英文:

In recent years, we have to face a problem of environmental protection, which is becoming more and more urgent. The present situation is worrying. First, natural resources are becoming less than before. Second, as some people are not aware of the importance of the environmental protection, the problems with it remain extremely serious to some degree. The gap between the rich and the poor has the tendency to become wider and wider.

We should take a series of effective measures to cope with the situation. On one hand, our government should make relevant laws and regulations and put large amounts of money to the environment protection. On the other hand, popularized education as well as international cooperation should be carried out.

As for myself, I should take the responsibility to devote my sustainable development, or our future and the lives of our children and grandchildren will be in risk. Only by making joint efforts can the problem be well resolved.



四、说明利弊型

针对这种题型，我们先说明一下现状，再对比两种情况的利弊，有时也可从一个角度（利或弊）出发，最后要表明自己的态度（或对事物的前景提出预测）。

文章的基本结构是：1. 说明现状 2. 优缺点比较（或方面） 3. 你的看法。

模板：

Nowadays, an increasing number of people prefer A (某种行为) because it has a significant role in our daily life. Generally, its advantages can be seen as follows. First, _____ (优点之一). Besides, _____ (优点之二).

But every coin has two sides. The negative aspects are also apparent. One of the important disadvantages is that _____ (一个缺点). To make matter worse, _____ (第二个缺点).

↳ Through the above analysis, I believe that the positive aspects outweigh the negative ones. Therefore, I would like to _____ (我的看法).



⇨ From the comparison between these positive and negative

effects of 这种行为, we should take it reasonably and do it according to the circumstances we are in. Only in this way, 才能达到目的.

英文:

Nowadays, an increasing number of people prefer to go online in their spare time, because it has a significant role in their daily life. Generally, its advantages can be seen as follows. First, through the Internet, they can gain new knowledge and the latest news at home and abroad. Besides, network offers them a convenient way to communicate with each other. The Internet makes their life outside class colourful.

But every coin has two sides. The negative aspects are also apparent. One of the important disadvantages is that some students prefer to play computer games instead of studying their lessons. To make matters ~~worse~~ worse, there are some students who are often absent from school for days.

Through the above analysis, I believe that the positive aspects outweigh the negative ones. Therefore, I would like to go online in my spare time.



五) 社会问题 (现象) 式议论文 * (考得很高)

本题型就是先列出一个具体的社会问题或者现象; 然后分析产生的原因和产生的影响; 然后提出解决办法; 最后预测前景。

基本结构是: 1. 列出问题或现象, 交待产生的原因, 或现象

2. 列出解决办法

3. 提出自己的观点建议。

模版:

Nowadays, there exists an increasingly serious social/economic/
environmental ... problem. _____ (一个具体的社会问题或现象) has increasingly

become a common concern of the public. According to a survey, _____
(自己编造数据等)

(说明这种现象的精和举一个例子) [But who is responsible for the _____

(现象)? First, _____ (理由一). Then, _____ (理由二). Besides,

_____ (理由三).] → 若文中给的是理由, 用此模式。

[_____ has caused substantial impact on the society and
our daily life, which has been articulated in the following aspects.



First, _____ (影响一); Second, _____ (影响二); Third, _____ (影响三)]

→ 若题中要求写影响, 用此模式。

Then what should we do to deal with the problem? On one hand,

做法一). On the other hand, 做法二).

As for me, 我的建议做法). And I hope that by making

joint efforts, 问题) will finally be solved in the future.

范文:

Nowadays, there exists an increasingly serious social problem. The World Food Crisis has become a common concern of the public all over the world. According to a survey, food shortages have hit many countries in the world, and even caused social unrest in some areas. But who is responsible for the current world food crisis? First, annual world grains output has declined because of climate change. Then, lots of farmland has been lost due to the rapid development of industry and urbanization. Besides, faced with the rising energy prices, people have turned to the production of biofuels, which has worsened the severe situation.

Then what should we do to deal with the problem? On one hand, we should focus on the environmental protection and improve the ecology. On the other hand, strict measures should be taken to protect farmland. Of course, to build a harmonious world the developed countries should take their responsibilities to help the poor ones experiencing food shortage.

As for me, I will call on the people around me to live thriftily.



And I hope that by making joint efforts, food crisis will finally be solved in the coming future.

(六) 图表作文

此类型的作文题中会首先给出一张数据表格, 或条形图、饼图, 图上是很多百分比或数据, 写作的基本结构是:

1. 描述表格中反映的视角和每个数据
2. 分析产生这种现象的原因
3. 应采取什么样的措施改变这种现象或继续保持
我对此现象的看法。
出现上述事情有何影响。

[依据题意而在第三段写什么]

模板 1:

As is shown/indicated/illustrated by the figure/percentage in the table/graph/picture/chart, _____ has been on the rise/decrease/goes up/increases/drops/decreases), significantly/dramatically/steadily rising/decreasing from in _____ to _____ in _____. From the sharp/marked decline/rise in the chart, it goes without saying that _____.

There are at least two good reasons accounting for _____. On the one hand, _____. On the other hand, _____ is due to the fact that _____.



_____ In addition, _____ is responsible for _____. Maybe _____

there are some other reasons to show _____. But it is generally believed that the above reasons are commonly convincing.

As far as I am concerned, I hold the point of view that _____
I am sure my opinion is both sound and well-grounded.

英文:

As is shown in the chart, the ownership of houses in a big city in China has changed in the past ten years. In 1995, 75% of the houses were state-owned. In 2000, the rate of state-owned houses to private ones was 3 to 2, while so far 80% of houses have been private.

There are at least two good reasons accounting for the changes. On one hand, since 1995, the people's living standards have been improving. Most of them can afford to buy the houses. On the other hand, the changes are due to the fact that most people do not save a lot of money in the bank for their children as their parents did in the past. They want to have their own home and enjoy life.

As far as I am concerned, I hold the point of view that such changes have had a great effect on the development of society. It does good to both the citizens and the government.



模板2:

According to a recent survey, _____ (指出一种现象), while _____

(同时有别的情况发生).

There are chiefly three reasons for it. Firstly, _____ (第一个原因).

Secondly, _____ (第二个原因). Apart from the above reasons, _____ (第三个原因).

By doing _____ (上文涉及事), _____ (持有什么样的好处或坏处出现). What's

more, _____ (介绍另一个方面的意义).

范文:

With the increasing number of private cars in recent years, there have been more road accidents in our city. According to a police report, 387 road accidents happened in 2007. With an economic loss of over 5 million yuan, 25 people were killed and 189 injured in these accidents, which made up nearly a third of all accidents. What's more, road accidents tend to increase.

There are chiefly two reasons for it. Firstly, most accidents are caused by driving against traffic regulations or by careless driving. Secondly, some pedestrians also disobey traffic rules.

By warning people of the danger on the road and enforcing the regulations strictly, all people will be safer to walk or drive on the road.



模板3:

It is obvious in the graphic / table that the rate / number / amount of _____ has undergone dramatic changes. It has gone up / grown / fallen / dropped considerably in recent years. At the point of _____, _____ reaches its peak.

What is the reason for this change? Mainly there are _____ (两个) reasons behind the situation reflected in the graphic / table. First of all, _____ (第一个原因); more importantly, _____ (第二个原因). Most important of all, _____ (第三个原因).

→ From the above discussions, we have enough reasons to predict what will happen in the near future. The trend described in the graphic / table will continue for quite a long time (if necessary measures not taken). → 表预测的结尾



→ As we all know, in order to _____ (改善这种情况).

measures should be taken without delay. First, (措施一). Second, (措施二). Last but not least, (措施三).

英文:

It is obvious in the chart that most of the middle school students only have less than 7 hours' sleep each day. Some even no more than 6 hours, which is much less the required.

What is the reason for this phenomenon? Mainly there are several reasons behind the situation reflected in the chart. First, of all, the students are burdened with too much homework. They have to bury themselves in doing homework all the while. Another important reason is that schools and parents pay more attention to their grades than health. But, in fact, this will be of great harm to their health.



As we all know, all work and no play make Jack

a dull boy. In order to improve the students' living and studying conditions, measures should be taken without delay. First, give the students less homework. Second, find a better way to teach and learn. Last but not least, to improve the teaching and learning efficiency is the best policy.

模版4: 可能有些题中不需分析原因, 只要描述数据, 下面贴上一篇例文供大家参考。

(广东卷)上周, 我们以“谁是你的偶像”为题, 在2600名学生中进行了一次调查(survey)。以下是调查数据:

偶像(idol)	女生	男生
伟人	18%	18%
父母	25%	11%
影视明星	50%	14%
体育明星	6%	48%
没有偶像	1%	9%

根据以上数据, 写一篇短文, 包括以下内容: 1. 调查时间、调查问题以及调查对象; 2. 男女生在以明星为偶像方面的差异; 3. “父母”在男女生偶像中的排序差异; 4. 男女生在以伟人为偶像方面的异同; 5. 你的偶像及理由。

写作要求:

- 只能使用5个句子表达全部内容;
- 文中不能出现真实姓名和学校名称。

范文选登:

Last week, a survey entitled "Who Is Your Idol". Was conducted among 2,600 boys and girls. As is shown in the chart, on the top of each list, half of the girls would like to regard film and TV stars as their idols, while 48% of the boys favor sports stars. With regard to parents, 25% of the girls, ranking second, tend to choose their parents as idols, which is

quite different from the choice of the boys, for whom parents just rank number 4. However, sharing the same percentage of 18%, both boys and girls show great interest in the great men.

As for me, I prefer to regard Lei Feng as my idol on account that he contributed so much in the whole country, setting us a perfect example of what a good person should be like.

精彩点击:

1. 读完此篇文章, 我们不得不赞叹作者的匠心独运, 尤其在遣词方面确实很有技巧。该作者用了六种不同的结构或词语表达偶像的选择, 在短短的五句话里面, 充分使用了分词、名词性从句、定语从句、状语从句等多种语法结构。就定语从句一类, 就使用了三种不同的形式: as 结构, 介词+关系词引导的从句以及 which 引导的非限制性从句。此篇作文体现出作者很强的综合运用语言的能力, 堪称一篇上等佳作。

2. Entitled 一词用得非常别致、出彩; as 结构的应用引出了下文各组数据, 非常自然; favor 一词的选用, 显示了作者对英语词汇的熟练运用能力。

3. Show great interest in 的使用再次换用表示选择自己偶像的表达方式; on account that 相当于 because, 但是较之 because 而言, 它属于高级用法。



比) 看漫画, 写作文* (考得很多)

此类型就是题中给出一幅漫画或图片, 让你分析。答题基本结构:

1. 描述图中的情况, 大概40字左右, 2-3行, 漫画用一般现在时描述, 照片视情而定
2. 解释所反映的社会现象, 可举例说明, 但必须先给一句概括性的解释, 大概60字左右, 3-4行
3. 在我看来, 该如何对待这种情况, 50字左右, 第三段很多地方有的范文都写得很少, 其实不对, 描述段该写少些, 重要的是分析和对策。

模板1.

In the cartoon, / As is shown in the picture, / As we can see
from the picture, / It is described in the cartoon that _____

(用2-3行描述图片).

As a matter of fact, this picture is a vivid description of
a common phenomenon in China: _____ (解释社会现象).

Also, you can see many such examples in our daily life.
_____ (举例论证).

From my point of view, _____ (表明自己的观点). On one



hand, _____ (建议一, 可从一角度对症下药如政府出发). On the other

hand, _____ (建议二, 可从另一角度出发, 比如 我们自身). } Only by making joint
 efforts } can _____ (问题) be well solved. } Only in this way

范文:



As is shown in the picture, there is a boy doing his homework. On the right is a kitchen, where a bottle of oil has dropped to the ground. The boy is calling out for someone to pick up the oil bottle.

Why doesn't the boy go and pick it up? Maybe he is too busy. Maybe he is too lazy. As a matter of fact, this picture is a vivid description of a common phenomenon in China. Students are expected to devote all their time to their studies and nothing else, even though the bottle of oil drops to the ground.

In my opinion, both the parents and the children should be blamed. On one hand, parents need to help their children develop in all aspects, not just in their studies. Encouraging children to do some housework will enable them to live independently when they grow up. On the other hand, children should know what qualities they need to have if they are to succeed in life. Sense of responsibility, love and willingness to help are good qualities that they should try to acquire.





"In just six hours you will be cured of your fear of snakes, heights, small spaces and commitment."

左图描绘的是某家心理诊所医生正斥良方的漫画。请你根据对这幅漫画的理解用英语写一篇短文，并发表你的看法。注意：

1. 仔细品味图中文字的幽默，并适当发挥想象，不要做简单描述。
2. 词数 150 左右，开头已经写好，不计入总词数。
3. 作文中不得提及考生所在学校和本人姓名。

As we can see from the picture, a doctor is introducing to a patient their way of treating mental illnesses.

参考范文：

As we can see from the picture, a doctor is introducing to a patient their way of treating mental illnesses. The cage, with some snakes inside, was high up on four columns. He was told that he would be cured of his fear of snakes, heights, small spaces and commitment in just six hours in that way.

According to my understanding, the picture is describing a person with some mental disability. He prefers to stay in large spaces with other's company. The two men down are very good doctors, trying to help cure the person of his illnesses. Instead of giving him some medicine, they had their own way of treating his patient, having him face his mental problems directly. The doctors think it more difficult for such patients to recover if they are only treated by means of pleasing them.

I think life is full of ups and downs. One can't step away from challenges or avoid responsibility. On the contrary, we should face them with courage and wisdom.



参考范文：

In the cartoon, the man enjoys being clever and wishes to do a great job. However, regretfully, he is firmly fastened to his original position by the nature of laziness and certainly achieves nothing.

In fact, you can see many such examples in life. Just as the old saying goes, "Diligence leads to success, while laziness results in failure." Every task requires hard work, from learning English to building a house. Some of my classmates are definitely clever, and they have a strong desire to go to a famous university, but unfortunately, they are wasting time talking and playing. And no doubt, they will end in failure.

Therefore, in my opinion, diligence plays a very important role in life. Only by working hard and practicing a lot are we able to overcome difficulties and achieve our goals. No one can succeed just by thinking without any actions.





上图中欧阳的妈妈正在与老师交谈，请根据图画所给提示，用英语写一篇短文，发表自己的感想。

参考范文：

One day, OuYang's mum was talking with his teacher. When the teacher asked OuYang's mum what shortcomings he had, the mother talked a lot. While being asked about her son's advantages, she kept silent, not knowing what to say.

The picture reflects a real problem in our daily family life. The parents try to satisfy their children physically, arranging everything for their children. As a result, they expect their children should get good marks in return. They think the children must follow their advice, no matter whether it is suitable to their children. However, when children don't obey their will or can't live up to their expectations, they will complain a lot. In a word, too much and little communication make the love selfish.

In my opinion, parents should communicate with their children as much as possible. Only in this way can children and parents understand each other. I believe mutual understanding and toleration can make them both happy.



模板二

有时候,对于某种现象人们会产生两种相反的观点,这样的漫画该如何表达?

右图反映的是当前网络上人们关注的热点话题,请你用英语写一篇短文,简要描述图片含义以及此事在网民中可能引起的不同反响,并联系生活实际,谈谈你对此的看法。

注意:

1. 词数 150 左右, 开头已给出, 不计入总词数。
2. 文中不得提及考生所在学校和本人姓名。

参考词汇: 缩略词 abbreviation 网民 netizen

As is shown in the picture.



参考范文:

As is shown in the picture, China Central Television (CCTV) is asked to avoid using certain English abbreviations in Chinese programs, such as NBA, CBA, F1. This started a heated discussion about the Internet whether Chinese should use English abbreviations.

Some netizens support this restriction, concerned that too many English abbreviations have spoiled the purity of our language and culture. Besides, some netizens claim that the elderly audience, especially those in rural areas, can not understand the exact meaning of some abbreviations.

On the contrary, some netizens doubt this decision. They believe the Chinese language should be open to borrowed words to keep its vitality. In addition, some English abbreviations, such as WTO, GDP etc, are so universally accepted that using Chinese translation only will lead to misinterpretation.

As far as I'm concerned, it's important to maintain the purity of our language, and it's necessary to guide people to use borrowed language correctly through some restrictions. But these restrictions should be taken cautiously as long as the use of English abbreviations is reasonable.



模板三:

对于照片,可采用前面的漫画模板,也可直接描述图片。



在大年初一,这位环卫女工第三次换雪水浸湿的袜子。



一位环卫女工坐在商店橱窗前借光夜读。

上面两张照片被传到网上后,在全国引起轰动,两个普通环卫工人的事迹感动了中国。请简要描述着两张照片,并谈谈你的感想(至少亮点)。文章的开头已经给出。

参考词汇: 被水浸透的 water-soaked

要求: 字数 150 左右。

Looking around us, we may surprisingly find that some people are not ordinary as we thought.

参考范文:

On the afternoon of the first day of the Spring Festival, a female cleaner leaned against the wall, taking off her water-soaked socks. They were the third pair that she had ever changed. In order to clear the road of snow to make sure of pedestrians' safety, she had worked for a whole day.

Every night always witnesses a grey-haired cleaner seated in the doorway of a shop. She is reading attentively by the light of the shop, lost to bitter cold and the noisy world. It is obvious that she wants to equip herself with knowledge to keep pace with the times of rapid development.

The two photos of average cleaners have moved China. How great Chinese cleaners are! They worked hard and never complain, though they do tough jobs; they are thirsty for knowledge and have a noble mental world.

The two photos also have touched my heart. I will regard devotion as my goal in life, having more diligence and fewer complains. Meanwhile, I appeal to the whole society to respect cleaners' labor, and to the government to improve their working and living conditions.



下图反映了家长给孩子送饭的常见现象。对此，家长、老师、学生都有各自的看法。请根据下表所提示的信息，用英文写一篇短文。



对象	观点或想法
家长	1. 学校的饭菜不合孩子的口味; 2. 满足孩子生活上的需要是家长应该做的; ……
老师	1. 家长的心情可以理解; 2. 可能会带来饮食安全问题; ……
学生	1. 感谢父母的关爱; 2. 但是, 我们……;(请考生结合自身感受, 列举两到三点)

- 注意: 1. 对所给要点逐一陈述, 适当发挥, 不要简单翻译。
2. 词数 150 左右。开头已经写好, 不计入总词数。
3. 作文中不得提及考生所在学校和本人姓名。

Nowadays it's common for parents to bring much delicious food to their children at school.

参考范文:

Nowadays it's common for parents to bring much delicious food to their children at school.

Parents, teachers and students have different opinions. Many parents don't think school food caters to their children's taste. They think it their responsibility to satisfy their children's needs. As for teachers, they understand what parents do for their children, yet the situation will bring about some problems, such as food safety.

We students should be grateful to our parents for their selfless love. Of course, with parents preparing delicious food and helping do all the washing, we can eat properly and have more time to study. However, if we are always under the protection of our parents, we can't develop our own ability to live independently.

So I think we students should not only learn the book knowledge, but also learn to live independently, which will make a difference to our work and life in the future.

下面附上 80 句高考作文佳句, 分为教育、旅游、工作等各个话题, 供同学们

背诵参考, 祝大家在高考中取得好成绩!



高考英语书面表达 **高分必背佳句**

1. 教育问题

1. This issue has aroused wide concern among teachers and parents in recent years.

这个问题近年来在教师和家长中引起广泛关注。

2. People seem to fail to take into account the fact that education does not end with graduation.

人们似乎忽视了教育不应该随着毕业而结束这一事实。

3. When it comes to education, the majority of people believe that education is a lifetime study.

说到教育, 大部分人认为其是一个终生的学习。

4. Many experts point out that physical exercise contributes directly to a person's physical fitness.

许多专家指出体育锻炼直接有助于身体健康。

5. No one can deny the fact that a person's education is the most important aspect of his life.

没有人能否认: 教育是人生最重要的一方面。

6. Nowadays, many students always go into raptures at the mere mention of the coming life of high school or college they will begin. Unfortunately, for most young people, it is not a pleasant experience on their first day on campus.

当前, 一提到即将开始的学校生活, 许多学生都会兴高采烈。然而, 对多数年轻人来说, 校园刚开始的日子并不是什么愉快的经历。

2. 城市发展问题

7. We should spare no effort to beautify our environment.

我们应该不遗余力地美化我们的环境。

8. An increasing number of experts believe that migrants will exert positive effects on the construction of city. However, this opinion is now being questioned by more and more city residents, who complain that the migrants have brought many serious problems like crime and prostitution.

越来越多的专家相信移民对城市的建设起到积极作用。然而, 越来越多的城市居民却怀疑这种说法, 他们抱怨民工给城市带来了许多严重的问题, 像犯罪和卖淫。

9. Many city residents complain that there are so few buses in their city that they have to spend much more time waiting for a bus, which is usually crowded with a large number of passengers.

许多市民抱怨城市的公交车太少, 以至于他们要花很长时间等一辆公交车, 而车上可能已满载乘客。

10. There is no denying the fact that air pollution is an extremely serious problem: the city authorities should take strong measures to deal with it.

无可否认, 空气污染是一个极其严重的问题: 城市当局应该采取有力措施来解决它。

11. Any government, which is blind to this point, may pay a heavy price.

任何政府忽视这一点都将付出巨大的代价。

12. In view of the seriousness of this problem, effective measures should be taken before things get worse.

考虑到问题的严重性, 在事态进一步恶化之前, 必须采取有效的措施。

13. The majority of students believe that a part-time job will provide them with opportunities to develop their interpersonal skills, which may put them in a favorable position in the future job markets.

大部分学生相信业余工作会使他们有更多机会发展人际交往能力,而这对他们未来找工作是非常有好处的。

14. It is indisputable that there are millions of people who still have a miserable life and have to face the dangers of starvation and exposure.

无可争辩,现在有成千上万的人仍过着挨饿受冻的痛苦生活。

3、计算机、医疗技术

15. People equate success in life with the ability of operating computers.

人们把会使用计算机与人生成功相提并论。

16. In the last decades, advances in medical technology have made it possible for people to live longer than in the past.

在过去的几十年,先进的医疗技术已经使得人们比过去活的时间更长成为可能。

17. In fact, we have to admit the fact that the quality of life is as important as life itself.

事实上,我们必须承认生命的质量和生命本身一样重要。

18. People believe that computer skills will enhance their job opportunities or promotion opportunities.

人们相信拥有计算机技术可以获得更多工作或提升的机会。

获取更多高考资讯,敬请关注“高考直通车认证空间”(QQ号 80796072)

19. The information I've collected over last few years leads me to believe that this knowledge may be less useful than most people think.

从这几年我搜集的信息来看,这些知识并没有人们想象的那么有用。

20. This is a matter of life and death—a matter no country can afford to ignore.

这是一个关系到生死的问题,任何国家都不能忽视。

21. For my part, I agree with the latter opinion for the following reasons:

我同意后者的,有如下理由:

23. Before giving my opinion, I think it is important to look at the arguments on both sides.

在给出我的观点之前,我想看看双方的观点是重要的。

24. This view is now being questioned by more and more people.

这一观点正受到越来越多人的质疑。

4、自行车的使用

25. Although many people claim that, along with the rapidly economic development, the number of people who use bicycles is decreasing and bicycles are bound to die out. The information I've collected over the recent years leads me to believe that bicycles will continue to play extremely important roles in modern society.

尽管许多人认为随着经济的高速发展,用自行车的人数会减少,自行车可能会消亡,然而,这几年我收集的一些信息让我相信自行车仍然会继续在现代社会发挥极其重要的作用。

26. Environmental experts point out that increasing pollution not only causes serious problems such as global warming but also could threaten to end human life on our planet.

环境学家指出:持续增加的污染不仅会导致像全球变暖这样严重的问题,而且还将威胁到人类在这个星球的生存。

27. Using bicycles contributes greatly to people's physical fitness as well as easing traffic jams.

使用自行车有助于人们的身体健康,并极大地缓解了交通阻塞。

28. Bicycles can't be compared with other means of transportation like cars and trains for speed and comfort.

在速度和舒适度方面,自行车是无法和汽车、火车这样的交通工具相比的。

29. From what has been discussed above, we may safely draw the conclusion that advantages of bicycles far outweigh its disadvantages and it will still play essential roles in modern society.

通过以上讨论,我们可以得出结论:自行车的优点远大于缺点,并且在现代社会它仍将发挥重要作用。

5、终身学习问题

30. There is a general discussion these days over education in many colleges and institutes. One of the questions under debate is whether education is a lifetime study.

当前在高校和研究机构对教育存在着大量争论,其中一个问题就是教育是否是个终身学习的过程。

31. This issue has caused wide public concern. It must be noted that learning must be done by a person himself.

这个问题已经引起了广泛关注,必须指出学习只能靠自己。

32. A large number of people tend to live under the illusion about that they had completed their education when they finished their schooling. Obviously, they seem to fail to take into account the basic fact that a person's education is a most important aspect of his life.

许多人存在这样的误解,认为离开学校就意味着结束了他们的教育。显然,他们忽视了教育是人生重要部分这一基本事实。

33. It is commonly accepted that no college or university can educate its students by the time they graduate.

人们普遍认为高校是不可能毕业的时候教会他们的学生所有知识的。

34. Even the best possible graduate needs to continue learning before she or he becomes an educated person.

即使最优秀的毕业生,要想成为一个博学的人也要不断地学习。

35. It is commonly thought that our society has dramatically changed by modern science and technology, and human has made extraordinary progress in knowledge and technology over the recent decades.

人们普遍认为我们的现代科技使我们的社会发生了巨大的变化,近几十年人类在科技方面取得了惊人的进步。

36. Now people in growing numbers are beginning to believe that learning new skills and knowledge contributes directly to enhancing their job opportunities or promotion opportunities.

现在越来越多的人开始相信学习新的技术和知识能直接帮助他们获得工作机会或提升的机会。

37. An investigation shows that many older people express a strong desire to continue studying in university or college.

一项调查显示许多老人都有到大学继续学习的愿望。

38. For the majority of people, reading or learning a new skill has become the focus of their lives and the source of their happiness and contentment after their retirement.

对大多数人来讲, 退休以后, 阅读或学习一项新技术已成为他们生活的中心和源。

39. For people who want to live a healthy and meaningful life style, it is important to find time to learn certain new knowledge. Just as an old saying goes: it is never too late to learn.

对于那些想过上健康而有意义的生活的人们来说, 找时间学习一些新知识是很重要的, 正如那句老话: 活到老, 学到老。

6、学生兼职打工

40. There is a general debate on the campus today over the phenomenon of college or high school students' doing a part-time job.

对于大学或高中生打工这一现象, 校园里进行着广泛的争论。

41. By taking a major-related part-time job, students can not only improve their academic studies, but gain much experience, which they will never be able to get from the textbooks.

通过做一份和专业相关的工作, 学生不仅能够提高他们的专业能力, 而且能获得从课本上得不到的经验。

42. Although people's life has been dramatically changed over the last decades, it must be admitted that, shortage of funds is still one of the biggest questions that students nowadays have to face because that tuition fees and prices of books are soaring day by day.

近几十年, 尽管人们的生活有了惊人的改变, 但必须承认, 由于学费和书费日益飞涨, 资金短缺仍然是学生们面临的重大问题之一。

43. Consequently, the extra money obtained from a part-time job will strongly support students to continue to their study life.

因此, 业余工作挣来的钱将强有力地支持学生们继续他们的求学生活。

44. From what has been discussed above, we may safely draw a conclusion that a part-time job can produce a far-reaching impact on students and they should be encouraged to take part-time job, which will benefit students and their families, even the society as a whole.

通过上面的讨论, 我们不难看出结论: 业余工作对学生们会产生深远的影响, 我们应鼓励学生从事业余工作, 这有利于学生和他们的家庭, 甚至整个社会。

45. A proper part-time job does not occupy students' too much time. In fact, it is unhealthy for them to spend all of time on their study. As an old saying goes: All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.

一份适当的业余工作并不会占用学生太多的时间, 事实上, 把全部的时间都用到学习上并不健康, 正如那句老话: 只工作, 不玩耍, 聪明的孩子会变傻。

7、工作问题

46. These days, people in growing numbers are beginning to complain that work is more stressful and less leisurely than in past. Many experts point out that, along with the development of modern society, it is an inevitable result and there is no way to avoid it.

现在, 越来越多的人开始抱怨工作比以前更有压力。许多专家指出这是现代社会发展必然的结果, 无法避免。

47. It is widely acknowledged that computers and other machines have become an indispensable part of our society, which make our life and work more comfortable and less laborious.

人们普遍认为计算机和其他机器已经成为我们社会必不可少的一部分, 它们使我们的生

Date

No.

活更舒适,减少了大量劳动。

48. At the same time, along with the benefits of such machines, employees must study knowledge involved in such machines so that they are able to control them.

同时,随着这些机器带给我们的好处,员工们也必须学习与之相关的知识以便使用它们。

49. Millions of people have to spend more time and energy in studying new skills and technology so that they can keep a favorable position in job market.

成千上万的人们不得不花费更多的精力和时间学习新的技术和知识,使得他们在就业市场能保持优势。

50. According to a recent survey, a growing number of people express a strong desire to take another job or spend more time on their job in order to get more money to support their families.

根据最近的一项调查,越来越多的人表达了想从事另外的工作或加班以赚取更多的钱来补贴家用的强烈愿望。

51. From what has been discussed above, I am fully convinced that the leisure life-style is undergoing a decline with the progress of modern society, it is not necessary a bad thing.

通过以上讨论,我完全相信,随着现代社会的进步,幽闲的生活方式正在消失并不是件坏事。

8、旅游问题

52. Many people believe that international tourism will produce positive effects on economic growth and local government should be encouraged to promote international tourism.

许多人认为国际旅游对经济发展有积极作用,应鼓励地方政府发展国际旅游。

53. But what these people fail to see is that international tourism may bring about a disastrous impact on our environment and local history.

但是这些人忽视了国际旅游可能会给当地环境和历史造成的灾难性的影响。

54. As for me, I'm firmly convinced that the number of foreign tourists should be limited, for the following reasons:

就我而言,我坚定地认为国外旅游者的数量应得到限制,理由如下:

55. In addition, in order to attract tourists, a lot of artificial facilities have been built, which have certain unfavorable effects on the environment.

另外,为了吸引旅游者,大量人工设施被修建,这对环境是不利的。

56. For lack of distinct culture, some places will not attract tourists any more. Consequently, the fast rise in number of foreign tourists may eventually lead to the decline of local tourism.

由于缺乏独特的文化,一些地方不再吸引旅游者。因此,国外旅游者数量的快速增加可能最终会导致当地旅游业的衰败。

57. Proper measures must be taken to limit the number of foreign tourists and the great efforts should be made to protect local environment and history from the harmful effects of international tourism.

应该采取适当的措施限制外国旅游者的数量,努力保护当地环境和历史不受国际旅游业的不利影响。

9、孩子的教育与成长

58. There is a growing tendency for parents to ask their children to accept extra educational programs over the recent years.

近年来，父母要求他们的孩子接受额外的教育呈增长的势头。

59. This phenomenon has caused wide public concern in many places of world.

这一现象在全世界许多地方已引起了广泛关注。

60. Many parents believe that additional educational activities enjoy obvious advantages. By extra studies, they maintain, their children are able to obtain many kinds of practical skills and useful knowledge, which will put them in a beneficial position in the future job markets when they grow up.

许多家长相信额外的教育活动有许多优点，通过学习，他们的孩子可以获得很多实践技能和有用的知识，当他们长大后，这些对他们就业是大有好处的。

61. In the first place, extra studies bring about unhealthy impacts on physical growth of children. Educational experts point out that, it is equally important to take some sport activities instead of extra studies when children have spent the whole day in a boring classroom.

首先，额外的学习对孩子们的身体发育是不利的，教育专家指出，孩子们在枯燥的教室里呆了一整天后，从事一些体育活动，而不是额外的学习，是非常重要的。

62. Children are undergoing fast physical development; lack of physical exercise may produce disastrous influences on their later life.

孩子们正处于身体快速发育时期，缺乏体育锻炼可能会对他们未来的生活造成严重的影响。

63. Moreover, children will have less time to play and communicate with their peers due to extra studies, consequently, it is difficult to develop and cultivate their characters and interpersonal skills. They may become more solitary and even suffer from certain mental illness.

而且，由于要额外地学习，孩子们没有多少时间和同龄的孩子玩耍和交流，很难培养他们的个性和交际能力，他们可能变得孤僻甚至产生某些心理疾病。

64. Although extra studies indeed enjoy many obvious advantages, its disadvantages shouldn't be ignored and far outweigh its advantages. It is absurd to force children to take extra studies after school.

尽管额外学习的确有很多优点，但它的缺点不可忽视，且远大于它的优点，因此，放学后强迫孩子额外学习是不明智的。

65. Any parents should place considerable emphasis on their children to keep the balance between play and study. As an old saying goes: All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.

任何家长都应非常重视保持孩子在学习与玩耍的平衡，正如那句老话：只工作，不玩耍，聪明的孩子会变傻。

66. However, this idea is now being questioned by more and more experts, who point out that it is unhealthy for children who always stay with their parents at home.

然而，这一想法正遭受越来越多的专家的质疑，他们指出，孩子总是呆在家里，和父母在一起，是不健康的。

67. Although parents would be able to devote much more time and energy to their children, it must be admitted that, parents have less experience and knowledge about how to educate and supervise children, when compared with professional teachers working in kindergartens or nursery schools.

尽管父母能在他们孩子身上投入更多时间和精力，但是必须承认，与工作在幼儿园的专职教师相比，他们在如何管理教育孩子方面缺乏知识和经验。

68. From what has been discussed above, we may safely draw a conclusion that, although the parents desire to look after children by themselves is understandable, its disadvantages far

outweigh the advantages.

通过以上讨论,我们可以得出如下结论:尽管家长想亲自照看孩子的愿望是可以理解的,但是这样做的缺点远大于优点。

69. Parents should be encouraged to send their children to nursery schools, which will bring about profound impacts on children and families, and even the society as a whole.

应该鼓励父母将他们的孩子送到幼儿园。这将对孩子,家庭,甚至整个社会产生深远的影响。

10、基础建设与艺术建设

70. But is it really the case? The information I've collected over last few years leads me to believe that artistic and cultural projects may be less useful than many governments think. In fact, basic infrastructure projects are playing extremely important roles and should be given priority.

这是真的吗?这些年我收集的信息让我相信这些文化、艺术项目并没有许多政府想象的那么重要。事实上,基础设施建设非常重要,应该放在首位。

71. Those who are in favor of artistic and cultural projects advocate that cultural environment will attract more tourists, which will bring huge profits to local residents. Some people even equate the build of such projects with the improving of economic construction.

那些赞成建设文化艺术项目的人认为文化环境会吸引更多的游客,这将给当地居民带来巨大的利益。一些人甚至把建设文化艺术项目与发展经济建设等同起来。

72. Unfortunately, there are very few evidences that big companies are willing to invest a huge sum of money in a place without sufficient basic projects, such as supplies of electricity and water.

然而,很少有证据表明大公司愿意把巨额的资金投到一个连水电这些基础设施都不完善的地方去。

73. From what has been discussed above, it would be reasonable to believe that basic projects play far more important roles than artistic and cultural projects in people's life and economic growth.

通过以上讨论,我们有理由相信在人们的生活和经济发展方面,基础建设比艺术文化项目发挥更大的作用。

74. Those urban planners who are blind to this point will pay a heavy price, which they cannot afford.

那些城市的规划者们如果忽视这一点,将会付出他们无法承受的代价。

11、民工问题

75. There is a growing tendency these days for many people who live in rural areas to come into and work in the city. This problem has caused wide public concern in most cities all over the world.

农民进城打工正成为增长的趋势,这一问题在世界上大部分城市已引起普遍关注。

76. An investigation shows that many emigrants think that working in the city provides them with not only a higher salary but also the opportunity of learning new skills.

一项调查显示许多民工认为在城市打工不仅有较高的收入,而且能学到一些新技术。

77. Although rural emigrants contribute greatly to the economic growth of the cities, they may inevitably bring about many negative impacts.

尽管民工对城市的经济发展做出了巨大贡献,然而他们也不可避免的带来了一些负面影

响。

78. Many sociologists point out that rural emigrants are putting pressure on population control and social order; that they are threatening to take already scarce city jobs; and that they have worsened traffic and public health problems.

许多社会学家指出民工正给人口控制和社会治安带来压力。他们正在威胁着本已萧条的工作市场，他们恶化了交通和公共卫生状况。

12、农民问题

79. It is suggested that governments ought to make efforts to reduce the increasing gap between cities and countryside. They ought to set aside an appropriate fund for improvement of the standard of peasants' lives. They ought to invite some experts in agriculture to share their experiences, information and knowledge with peasants, which will contribute directly to the economic growth of rural areas.

建议政府应该努力减少正在拉大的城乡差距，应该划拨适当的资金提高农民的生活水平；应该邀请农业专家向农民介绍他们的经验，知识和信息，这些将有助于发展农村经济。

80. In conclusion, we must take into account this problem rationally and place more emphases on peasants' lives. Any government that is blind to this point will pay a heavy price.

总之，我们应理智考虑这一问题，重视农民的生活，任何政府忽视这一点都将付出巨大的代价。

13、其他问题

81. Although many experts from universities and institutes consistently maintain that it is an inevitable part of an independent life, parents in growing numbers are starting to realize that people, including teachers and experts in education, should pay considerable attention to this problem.

尽管来自高校和研究院的许多专家坚持认为这是独立生活不可避免的一部分，然而越来越多的家长开始意识到包括教师和教育专家在内的人们应该认真对待这一问题。

82. According to a recent survey, four million people die each year from diseases linked to smoking.

依照最近的一项调查，每年有 4, 000, 000 人死于与吸烟有关的疾病。



